

摘 要

本文利用 Hirota 方法、Wronskian 技巧和 Bäcklund 变换研究了一些等谱, 非等谱与具自容源孤子方程的多孤子解. 在第二章中通过新的双线性导数公式, 利用 Hirota 方法得到了 KP 方程, 非线性自偶网格方程, Toda 链和非线性 Schrödinger 方程新的单孤子, 双孤子解, 并猜测出新 N 孤子解的表达式. 特别由这些新解可导出原经典解. 第三章叙述了 Wronskian 行列式的定义与性质, 并以 KP 和 Toda 链方程为例, 证明其具有 Wronskian 形式的新解. 然后在第四章中由 KP 方程的谱问题与时间发展式导出具自容源 KP 方程, 利用 Hirota 截断技术, 可得单孤子解, 双孤子解, 三孤子解等等, 并猜测出 N 孤子解的一般表达式. 此外利用 Wronskian 行列式的性质和某些特殊的处理方法, 证明了具自容源的 KP 方程具有 Wronskian 形式的解. 通过直接计算证明了由 Hirota 方法猜测的 N 孤子解的表达式与 Wronskian 形式的 N 孤子解是一致的. 类似于第二章的求解过程, 利用 Hirota 方法得到了具自容源 KP 方程的新解. 在第五章中我们分别给出了非等谱 KP 和 KdV 方程的双线性形式和双线性 Bäcklund 变换. 利用 Hirota 方法得到了非等谱 KP 和 KdV 方程的多孤子解的表达式. 但是与等谱情形不同的是由 Hirota 方法得到的 f 的表达式与 Wronskian 形式解的表达式 f 在恢复非等谱方程的 N 孤子解时是不一致的. 由非等谱 KP 和 KdV 方程的双线性 Bäcklund 变换出发, 利用 Hirota 方法和 Wronskian 技巧分别得到这些方程解的表达式并讨论了其解的一致性. 需要指出的是在等谱方程 Bäcklund 变换的求解中, 一般是由方程的已知解求出新解, 再以所得的解作为已知解, 求出更新解, 周而复始. 但是在非等谱 KP 方程双线性 Bäcklund 变换中这种规则是不成立的. 把孤子方程的 Bäcklund 变换作一些修正, 利用修正的 Bäcklund 变换, 可以得到孤子方程的新解, 在本文的最后一章中以 KP 方程为例说明了这一点. 在附录中, 我们给出论文中所求出孤子解的相应图形.

本文中利用 Hirota 方法, Wronskian 技巧和双线性 Bäcklund 变换对孤子方程的求解技巧, 可推广到其他孤子方程.

关键词: 孤子方程; Hirota 方法; Wronskian 技巧; Bäcklund 变换; 新解.

Abstract

In this paper, we consider the solution of some soliton equations by Hirota method, Wronskian technique and Bäcklund transformation. The novel multisoliton solutions for the KP equation, the nonlinear lumped self-dual network equations, the Toda lattice and the nonlinear Schrödinger equation are derived by using of Hirota direct method. The KP equation and the Toda lattice have also solutions in new Wronskian form . In addition, taking the KP equation as example we also show the novel solutions obtained by Bäcklund transformation are coincidence with the novel solution obtained through Hirota method. The above three methods are easily to be extended to some other soliton equations.

The paper also proposes a KP equation with self-consistent sources from the linear problem of the KP system. One-, two- and even three-soliton solutions are successively constructed through the standard Hirota's approach. On the basis of this, We conjecture further a general formula of N -soliton solution. We also use Wronskian technique to give Wronski determinant solutions. By virtue of some determinantal identities, solution is verified by direct substitution into the bilinear equations of the KP equation with self-consistent sources. The coincidence of the N -soliton solutions obtained by Hirota method and Wronskian technique is proved. The novel multisoliton solutions for the KP equation with self-consistent sources are also obtained by Hirota method.

Apart from that, the bilinear equation and bilinear Bäcklund transformation for the nonisospectral KP equation and the nonisospectral KdV equation are obtained. Exact solutions are constructed in terms of Wronskian and are verified by direct substitution to the satisfy the bilinear equation and the associated Bäcklund transformation respectively. These two nonisospectral equations are also solved through the Hirota method. Finally, some figures are presented to show the shape and motion of the soliton solutions for some equations.

Key words: soliton equations; novel solutions; Hirota method; Wronskian technique; Bäcklund transformation.

上海大学

本论文经答辩委员会全体成员审查，确认符合上海大学博士学位论文质量要求。

答辩委员会名单：

主任：(工作单位，职称)

楼森岳 上海同济大学，教授 (200030)

委员：

李志斌 华东师大，教授 200062

范思贵 复旦大学 教授 200433

茅德康 上海大学 教授 200436

马和平 上海大学 教授 200436

导师：陈登远 上大

答辩日期：2004.3.11

原创性声明

本人声明：所提交的论文是本人在导师指导下进行的研究工作。除了文中特别加以标注和致谢的地方外，论文中不包含其他人已发表或撰写过的研究成果。参与同一工作的其他同志对本研究所做的任何贡献均已在论文中作了明确的说明并表示了谢意。

签 名：_____ 日 期_____

本论文使用授权说明

本人完全了解上海大学有关保留、使用学位论文的规定，即：学校有权保留论文及送交论文复印件，允许论文被查阅和借阅；学校可以公布论文的全部或部分内容。

（保密的论文在解密后应遵守此规定）

陈登达

签 名：_____ 导师签名：陈登达 日期：2004.3.11

第一章 前 言

1.1 引 言

早在 1834 年, 英国著名科学家 Scott Russell 偶然观察到了一种奇特的水波 [1], 这种水波在行进的过程中形状与速度并无明显变化. 他在后来的“论波动”一文中称它为孤立波, 并认为这种孤立波是流体运动的一个稳定解. 但当时 Russell 并未成功地给出使物理学家信服的数学证明. 直到六十年后的 1895 年, 荷兰著名数学家 Korteweg 和他的学生 de Vries 在研究浅水波的运动时提出一个描述一维长波在浅水沟中的传播运动的非线性方程, 即著名的 KdV 方程 [2],

$$u_t + 6uu_x + u_{xxx} = 0, \quad (1.1.1)$$

并求出形如

$$u(x, t) = \frac{k^2}{2} \operatorname{sech}^2(kx - k^3t + \xi^{(0)})$$

的行波解, 其中 $k, \xi^{(0)}$ 为常数. 这一结果为 Russel 的观察提供了完美的理论解释. 然而这种波相互作用时是否稳定? 即两个孤立波碰撞后能否变形? 这个问题长期没有得到解决.

在二十世纪五十年代, 著名物理学家 Fermi, Pasta 和 Ulam(FPU)[3] 在研究有固定点的一维非谐振子链的能量分布时, 发现经典物理难以解释的现象: 随着时间的推移, 能量并未像预期的那样均匀分布, 而是最终又回到原来的初始分布状态. 1965 年, 美国物理学家 Kruskal 和 Zabusky[4] 利用先进的计算机通过数值计算详细研究了 KdV 方程两波相互作用的全过程. 经过对作用前后所得的数据进行分析后发现孤波的形状和速度保持不变而且具有弹性散射的性质. 他们把这些特殊的波称为“孤立子”. Kruskal 和 Zabusky 的这项研究工作, 是孤立子理论发展史中的一个重要里程碑, 他们所揭示的孤立波的本质, 已被普遍的接受. 从此一个研究非线性发展方程与孤立子的热潮在学术界蓬勃地开展起来.

1.2 孤子方程的求解

孤立子理论从各个角度研究了孤立子方程以及方程所涉及的数学内容, 其中重要的一个方面就是如何求解孤立子方程以及讨论解的性质. 因此, 寻求精确解的方法一直是孤立子方程研究中的前沿问题. 目前已经有许多成功的方法, 如反散射变换方法, Bäcklund 变换方法, Hirota 方法, Darboux 变换方法, Wronskain 技巧等等. 每一种方法都产生了很丰富的数学理论.

1967年, Gardner, Greene, Kruskal 和 Miura(GGKM)对 KdV 方程做了深入的研究, 并得到一系列的结果 [5]-[10]. 他们首先对 KdV 方程 (1.1) 作 Miura 变换 $u = -(v_x + v^2)$ 得到 mKdV 方程

$$v_t - 6v^2v_x + v_{xxx} = 0, \quad (1.2.1)$$

再在 Miura 变换中令 $v = \psi_x/\psi$ 并通过 Galileo 不变性引入谱参数得到一维定态的 Schrödinger 方程

$$\psi_{xx} + u(x, t) = \lambda\psi. \quad (1.2.2)$$

如果方程 (1.2.2) 的势函数 $u(x, t)$ 按照 KdV 方程 (1.1.1) 随时间 t 演化, 那么谱参数 λ 就与时间无关的, 并且波函数 ψ 随时间的演化满足方程

$$\psi_t + \psi_{xxx} - 3(\lambda - u)\psi_x = 0. \quad (1.2.3)$$

于是他们由量子力学中的 Schrödinger 方程的正散射方法得到 $t = 0$ 时刻的势函数 u 的散射数据, 再通过 (1.2.3) 构造出散射数据随时间演化的常微分方程组, 解得 t 时刻的散射数据, 由此还原出 Schrödinger 方程的势函数, 即 KdV 方程的解, 这就是著名的反散射变换方法. 此外他们还发现 KdV 方程具有无穷多个守恒律, 存在任意多的孤子解, 这些工作奠定了非线性 Fourier 分析的基础.

反散射方法已被广泛的应用到一系列的非线性发展方程中, 例如: mKdV, 非线性 Schrödinger 和 sine-Gordon 等方程 [11]-[18]. 这一方法有其严格的物理背景和数学严谨性 [5, 10], 而且可以求出与同一谱问题相联系的整个等谱发展方程族的多孤子解. 一般说来, 如果给定谱问题的位势, 求此谱问题的本征函数及所对应的离散谱, 连续谱等散射数据称为正散射, 反之给定散射数据, 要求恢复谱问题的位势称为反散射问题. 它的主要步骤是先从与方程相联系的线性问题出发, 将所求的位势归结为 Gelfand-Levitan-Marchenko (GLM) 线性积分方程, 并建立散射数据与时间的关系; 然后由 GLM 积分方程的解来获得初值问题的解. 反散射方法利用了大量的分析技巧和算子谱理论分析的有关知识 [17, 18]. 它是传统的 Fourier 分析的思想在解决非线性问题的推广.

Bäcklund 变换也是一种求解的方法. 1883年, 几何学家 Bäcklund 在研究负常曲率曲面时, 发现 sine-Gordon 方程的一个有趣的性质 [19], 即由 sine-Gordon 方程的一解 u 通过变换得到另一解 u' . L. P. Eisenhart 在他于 1909年发表的著作《曲线与曲面的微分几何教程》中介绍了 Bäcklund的工作, 并放在重要位置, 他把 sine-Gordon 方程解之间的这种变换称为 Bäcklund 变换 [20]. 随着孤子理论的发展, Bäcklund 变换愈来愈受到重视, 并且不限于 sine-Gordon 方程, 人们发现其他孤子方程也有类

似的变换, 统称之为 Bäcklund 变换, 从此 Bäcklund 变换就成为求非线性方程解的重要方法.

利用 Bäcklund 变换, 可从孤子方程的已知解出发求出新的孤子解, 并可进一步以新解作为已知解, 求出更新的解, 周而复始, 即可生成方程一系列的解. 人们逐渐发现存在一些方法构造非线性偏微分方程的 Bäcklund 变换, 而且所得 Bäcklund 变换的形式是完全不同的. 直接从两个解 u 与 u' 满足的偏微分方程出发, 消去这些解的高阶导数所得的 u 与 u' 的微分方程组称为 Wahlquist-Estabrook(WE) 形式的 Bäcklund 变换 [21, 22]. 如果在某些限制下非线性偏微分方程可以成为一对线性问题 (谱问题与时间发展式) 的相容性条件, 这时借助将线性问题化为自身的规范变换能得不同位势 u, u' 与线性问题的本征函数 ϕ 所满足的方程, 它即为 Darboux 形式的 Bäcklund 变换 [22, 23]. 以上两种形式的 Bäcklund 变换在求解时涉及到解微分方程组, 往往在求多孤子解时会遇到困难. 直到 1974 年, Hirota 提出一种 Bäcklund 变换的双线性导数形式 [24], 即对于与非线性偏微分方程相联系的一对线性问题, 其能通过位势 u, u' 及本征函数中的适当分式变换化归为双线性导数方程, 使得求多孤子解变得简单起来. 这三种不同形式的 Bäcklund 变换是相互等价的 [25], 并且都可归结为 Hirota 形式的 Bäcklund 变换 [26]-[31].

1971 年 Hirota 提出一种获得孤子解的简单直接方法 [32], 在这种方法中, Hirota 引入两个函数的双线性导数概念, 通过位势 u 的变换, 孤子方程就可以化为双线性导数方程, 将扰动展开式代入到方程中, 在一定条件下该展开式可以截断, 并可得到线性指数函数形式的单孤子解, 双孤子解和三孤子解等具体表达式, 由此猜测出多孤子解的一般表达式. 此表达式可利用数学归纳法验证其成立 [17], 但过程比较复杂. Hirota 方法所引入的位势 u 的变换, 往往以反散射变换的结果为基础. 由于操作简便, 其使用范围几乎涵盖了所有反散射变换可解的方程 [11],[32]-[43]; 而且借助于 Mathematica 等工具软件, 还可应用于一系列较复杂的离散链孤子系统 [44]-[50]. 这一方法的不足之处在于只能求解单一的方程, 而且其对 N -孤子解表达式的猜测难以给出令人满意的证明. 最近陈登远, 张大军和作者等 [51]-[55] 利用 Hirota 方法构造出孤子方程的新解, 这就极大地丰富解的类型与 Hirota 方法适用的范围.

另一种直接方法是 Wronskian 技巧, 这是一种应用广泛且高效的方法, 其得益于 Wronskain 行列式本身良好的性质. 孤子解可以表示成 Wronskain 行列式, 这种表示首先由 Satsuma 在 1979 年引入 [56]. 然而 Satsuma 本人并没有将解的这种表示与孤子方程的双线性形式联系起来. 直到 1983 年, 作为一种求解孤子方程的系统方法 - Wronskain 技巧 - 才由 Freeman 和 Nimmo 提出并建立起来的 [57]. 该方法以 Hirota 方法为基础, 即首先要得到孤子方程的双线性形式或双线性 Bäcklund 变

换, 然后选择适当的 ϕ_j 构成 Wronskian 行列式 $W(\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_N)$, 再代入到双线性方程或双线性 Bäcklund 变换中利用 Wronskian 行列式的性质和代数学的 Laplace 定理进行验证, 而且证明过程简洁. 能够进行解的直接验证, 这恰是 Wronskian 技巧的优势所在. Freeman 等人应用该方法获得了一系列方程和方程的 Bäcklund 变换 Wronskian 形式的解 [58]-[73]. 还有一个有趣的事实是 KdV 方程和经典 Boussinesq 方程族的有理解 [74, 78] 也可以写成 Wronskian 行列式形式 [75], 但其他方程的有理解却很难有此表示. 关于 Wronskian 技巧, 还有很多深入推广的工作, 如 positon 解及其 positon-soliton 解的广义 Wronskian 表示 [76], 利用双结构 Wronskian 行列式构造的 AKNS 和经典 Boussinesq 等谱发展方程族解的推广 [77], 一些孤子方程的 Wronskian 混和解 [79] 等等.

以上几种孤子方程的求解方法中, Wronskian 技巧与反散射变换、Hirota 方法和 Bäcklund 变换有着密切的联系. 1983 年, Freeman 和 Nimmo[61] 给出了 KdV 方程反散射变换解的 Wronskian 表示. 近年来我们发现某些孤子方程由 Hirota 方法和 Wronskian 技巧分别得到的解是一致的 [80]. 从而说明由 Hirota 方法猜测出 N 孤子解的表达式的正确性. 利用不同方法所得的多孤子解也存在等价性问题. 另外还发现许多孤子方程用 Hirota 方法得到的解和从 Bäcklund 变换的双线性形式出发得到的解也是一致的 [80]. 最近, 陈登远证明了一些孤子方程由 Hirota 方法, 双线性 Bäcklund 变换所获得的 N 孤子解与 Wronskian 形式解的一致性 [25, 80]. Wronskian 技巧就象一座桥梁, 将孤子方程的多种求解方法紧密地联系起来.

当然, 精确求解孤子方程的方法远不止于此, 并且不断有新的方法出现. 比如, Nakamura 利用矩阵代数中的 Jacobi 等式得到一些孤子方程的解 [81]. Hirota 利用 Pfaffian 技术得到 BKP 方程的解 [82]. 曾云波等提出了通过约束流来构造 N -孤子解的方法 [83, 84]. 韩文亭和李翊神提出了一种构造孤子方程解的矩阵方法 [85, 86] 等等.

1.3 具自容源的孤子方程族

1986 年 Mel'nikov[87] 发现在某些特定的条件下, 非线性可积系统会出现波的消失和产生的现象. 并在分析方程

$$3u_{yy} - u_{xt} - 6uu_x - u_{xxx} - 8k|v^2|_{xx} = 0, \quad iv_y = uv + v_{xx}, \quad k^2 = 1, \quad (1.3.1)$$

的解时, 解释了这一现象. 方程 (1.3.1) 描述了长波与短波的相互作用, 其中 u 表示长波, v 表示短波包. 方程 (1.3.1) 具有行波解与驻波解, 在某些条件下行波减速可形成两个驻波, 相反在一定条件下一个驻波吸收另一驻波而形成行波, 这恰是线性系统所不具有的现象. 接着 1989 年 Mel'nikov[88] 又提出具一个自容源的 KP 方程

(1.3.1) 具有变速运动的解, 并给出了解的具体表达式. 他所得的结果与流体力学, 固体力学, 等离子体物理等某些问题是相关的. Mel'nikov[89]-[94] 还对其他方程进行了类似的研究. 近年来无论是具自容源方程的导出还是其解的具体表达式都引起了人们的关注.

已有许多方法可以用来得到具自容源的方程. Mel'nikov[93] 在原有的 Lax 对的表达式中增加一个新算子, 其中算子的系数要依赖于某个方程的解, 由新的 Lax 对可以得到具自容源的 KdV, Boussinesq, 非线性 Schrödinger 和 KP 方程等. Leon 等人 [94]-[96] 从色散律的奇异部分可以得到相应的自容源. 曾云波等人从约束流出发可以得到具自容源的一系列方程族 [97]-[117], 如具自容源的 KdV 方程族, AKNS 方程族, modified KdV 方程族和 Kaup-Newell 方程族等. 这些具自容源方程拥有 t 型的 Hamilton 或双 Hamilton 结构 [101] 而且还可以推导出 sinh-Gordon 型的方程 [103]. 最近我们孤子小组也提出一种新的可以得到具自容源方程族的方法 [104]-[108].

对于具自容源的方程求解已有许多成功的方法. Doktorov 等 [109],[110] 运用 $\bar{\partial}$ -方法和规范变换可得到具自容源 modified NLS 和 modified Manakov 方程的解. 曾云波等利用反散射方法得到一些具自容源解的具体形式 [90],[94], [111]-[113], 例如: 非等谱 KdV, AKNS, modified KdV, 非线性 Schrödinger 和 Kaup-Newell 方程族, 并提出了具自容源 Kaup-Newell, AKNS 和 KdV 方程族的 Darboux 变换 [114]-[116]. 我们孤子小组利用 Hirota 方法和 Wronskain 技巧求出了具自容源的 KdV, mKdV, sine-Gordon 和 KP 等方程的解 [104]-[108].

1.4 非等谱方程

孤子方程有许多奇特的性质, 其中最基本的性质是这些方程可以写成一对线性问题的可积条件, 称为孤子方程的 Lax 可积. 由此引出等谱与非等谱的两类孤子方程.

1968 年 Lax[118] 注意到在 GGKM 的理论中, 若线性微分方程组 (1.2.2) 和 (1.2.3) 成立, 引出它们的相容性条件即可得 KdV 方程 (1.1.1), 他发展了这个思想, 把它写为算子的形式

$$L_t = [L, A], \quad (1.4.1)$$

其中 $L = \partial^2 + u(x, t)$, $A = -4\partial^3 - 3(u\partial + \partial u)$, 这就是著名的 Lax 方程, 算子 L 和 A 称为 Lax 对. Lax 方程 (1.4.1) 在一维的情形常可表示为零曲率方程. 设谱问题

$$\phi_x = M\phi, \quad (1.4.2a)$$

$$\phi_t = N\phi, \quad (1.4.2b)$$

其中 ϕ 是一 n 维列向量, M 与 N 是依赖于位势 $u = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n)$ 与谱参数 λ 的 n 阶矩阵. 由 (1.4.2a) 和 (1.4.2b) 的相容性有

$$M_t - N_x + [M, N] = 0. \quad (1.4.3)$$

则 (1.4.3) 称为 Lie 群结构方程或零曲率方程. 从 (1.4.3) 可以构造出等谱和非等谱的 KdV, mKdV 和 AKNS 等方程族 [80], 并且这些方程可以通过一个微分积分算子分别递推地表示出来. 高维孤子系统也存在等谱与非等谱两类方程 [80], [119], 这些方程可从联系拟微分算子的线性问题依谱参数随时间的不同变化规律逐一导出. 与低维情形不同, 相应的流已不能用一递推算子简单的表示.

反散射方法, Hirota 方法, Bäcklund 变换方法和 Wronskian 技巧等已成功地用来对等谱方程求解. 非等谱方程与等谱方程具有某些相似的地方, 所以在处理非等谱的问题时可用类似的方法. Gupta 等 [120]-[121] 利用反散射变换求得了一些非等谱方程的解. 1976 年 Hirota 等 [122] 把带有损耗和非均匀项的 KdV 方程

$$u_t + 2\alpha u + (c_0 + \alpha x)u_x + 6uu_x + u_{xxx} = 0. \quad (1.4.4)$$

写成双线性形式, 并得到孤子解. 最近我孤子小组发现某些非等谱方程利用 Hirota 方法可写成双线性的形式, 由 Hirota 方法和 Wronskian 技巧可以得到其解的具体表达式.

1.5 论文的主要工作

本文的目的是利用 Hirota 方法, Wronskian 技巧与 Bäcklund 变换来研究一些等谱与非等谱, 具自容源孤子方程的多孤子解的具体形式.

在第二章, 首先简单介绍了双线性导数的定义和性质. 进而推导出一些双线性导数新的公式, 其在求解孤子方程的新解中发挥着重要的作用. 由孤子方程的双线性导数方程出发, 利用截断技术, 我们得到 KP, 非线性自偶网格, Toda 链和非线性 Schrödinger 方程新的单孤子, 双孤子解, 并猜测出 N 孤子解的表达式. 特别从这些新解可以导出原经典解.

第三章中我们简单回顾了 Wronskian 行列式的定义与性质. 以 KP 和 Toda 链方程为例, 证明了其双线性方程具有 Wronskian 形式的新解.

第四章中我们首先由 KP 方程的谱问题与时间发展式的相容性条件出发导出具自容源 KP 方程. 接着通过变换, 把具自容源 KP 方程写成双线性形式. 利用 Hirota 截断技术, 可得单孤子解, 双孤子解, 三孤子解等等, 并猜测出 N 孤子解的一般表达式. 此外我们利用 Wronskian 行列式的性质和某些特殊的处理方法, 证明了具自

容源的 KP 方程具有 Wronskian 形式的解. 通过直接计算证明由 Hirota 方法猜测的 N 孤子解的表达式与 Wronskian 形式的 N 孤子解是一致的. 最后类似于第二章求新解的过程, 可得具自容源 KP 方程 $N = 1, 2, \dots$ 时新解的表达式, 其中论文里只叙述了 $N = 1$ 时的表达式.

第五章中利用 Hirota 方法, Wronskian 技巧和双线性 Bäcklund 变换分别得到非等谱 KP 方程和非等谱 KdV 方程的解. 但是与等谱情形不同的是由 Hirota 方法得到的 f 的表达式与 Wronskian 形式解的表达式 f 在恢复非等谱方程的 N 孤子解时是不一致的. 也从非等谱 KP 和 KdV 方程的双线性 Bäcklund 变换出发, 利用 Hirota 方法和 Wronskian 技巧分别得到这些方程解的表达式并讨论解的一致性.

同样, 利用 Hirota 方法和 Wronskian 技巧分别从方程与相应的 Bäcklund 变换出发亦可求得新解, 在第六章中我们以 KP 方程为例, 把 KP 方程的双线性 Bäcklund 变换作了一些修正, 利用修正 Bäcklund 变换给出了不同形式的解.

在附录中, 我们给出论文中一些孤子解的相应图形.

第二章 某些孤子方程 Hirota 形式的新解

在寻求孤子方程精确解的方法中, Hirota 方法是个重要直接的方法. 在本章中, 首先我们介绍了双线性导数的定义与性质, 然后利用 Hirota 方法获得了 KP 方程, 非线性自偶网格, Toda 链和非线性 Schrödinger 方程的新解. 并且这种方法也可推广到其他孤子方程 [51]-[55].

2.1 双线性导数的性质

设 $f(t, x)$ 与 $g(t, x)$ 是变数 t 与 x 的可微函数, 引进微分算子 D_t 与 D_x , 使对任意的非负整数 m 和 n 成立

$$D_t^m D_x^n f \cdot g = (\partial_t - \partial_{t'})^m (\partial_x - \partial_{x'})^n f(t, x) g(t', x') \Big|_{t'=t, x'=x}. \quad (2.1.1)$$

式 (2.1.1) 称为函数 f 与 g 对 t 施行 m 次 D_t , 对 x 施行 n 次 D_x 的双线性导数.

设 a_n 与 b_n 是整数 n 的函数, 则定义微分算子 e^{D_n} , 它作用在积 $a_n b_n$ 时表示 a_n 的下标进一, b_n 的下标退一, 就是

$$e^{D_n} a_n \cdot b_n = a_{n+1} b_{n-1}. \quad (2.1.2)$$

而它的逆算子 e^{-D_n} 作用在积 $a_n b_n$ 时, 下标进退应相反, 即

$$e^{-D_n} a_n \cdot b_n = a_{n-1} b_{n+1}. \quad (2.1.3)$$

于是双曲余弦算子 $\cosh D_n$ 的作用规则是

$$\cosh D_n a_n \cdot b_n = \frac{1}{2} (e^{D_n} + e^{-D_n}) a_n \cdot b_n = \frac{1}{2} (a_{n+1} b_{n-1} + a_{n-1} b_{n+1}). \quad (2.1.4)$$

下面我们列举一些双线性算子的性质:

1) 利用双线性导数的定义我们容易得到

$$D_x^m a \cdot b = (-1)^m D_x^m b \cdot a, \quad (2.1.5a)$$

$$D_x^m a \cdot a = 0, \quad m \text{ 为奇数}, \quad (2.1.5b)$$

$$D_x D_t a \cdot 1 = D_x D_t 1 \cdot a = \frac{\partial^2 a}{\partial x \partial t}, \quad (2.1.5c)$$

$$\exp(\epsilon D_x) a(x) \cdot b(x) = a(x + \epsilon) b(x - \epsilon), \quad (2.1.5d)$$

若 $a(t, x) = e^{q_1 t + p_1 x}$, $b(x, t) = e^{q_2 t + p_2 x}$, 则有

$$D_t^m D_x^n a \cdot b = (q_1 - q_2)^n (p_1 - p_2)^m ab, \quad (2.1.5e)$$

2) 以下公式在孤子方程改写成双线性方程时是经常用到的

$$\exp(\delta D_t + \epsilon D_x)a \cdot b = a(t + \delta, x + \epsilon)b(t - \delta, x - \epsilon), \quad (2.1.6)$$

若 $u = 2(\ln a)_{xx}$, 则有

$$\frac{D_x^2 a \cdot a}{a^2} = u, \quad (2.1.7a)$$

$$\frac{D_x^4 a \cdot a}{a^2} = u_{xx} + 3u^2, \quad (2.1.7b)$$

$$\frac{D_x^6 a \cdot a}{a^2} = u_{xxxx} + 15uu_{xx} + 15u^3, \quad (2.1.7c)$$

若令 $\phi = a/b$, 有

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{a}{b} \right) = \frac{D_x a \cdot b}{b^2}, \quad (2.1.8a)$$

$$\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} \left(\frac{a}{b} \right) = \frac{D_x^2 a \cdot b}{b^2} - \left(\frac{a}{b} \right) \frac{D_x^2 b \cdot b}{b^2}, \quad (2.1.8b)$$

$$\frac{\partial^3}{\partial x^3} \left(\frac{a}{b} \right) = \frac{D_x^3 a \cdot b}{b^2} - 3 \left(\frac{D_x a \cdot b}{b^2} \right) \frac{D_x^2 b \cdot b}{b^2}, \quad (2.1.8c)$$

$$\frac{\partial^4}{\partial x^4} \left(\frac{a}{b} \right) = \frac{D_x^4 a \cdot b}{b^2} - 6 \left(\frac{D_x^2 a \cdot b}{b^2} \right) \frac{D_x^2 b \cdot b}{b^2} - \frac{a}{b} \left[\frac{D_x^4 b \cdot b}{b^2} - 6 \left(\frac{D_x^2 b \cdot b}{b^2} \right)^2 \right], \quad (2.1.8d)$$

3) 直接从方程引出其双线性 Bäcklund 变换时需要公式

$$D_x ab \cdot cd = (D_x a \cdot d)cb - ad(D_x c \cdot b), \quad (2.1.9a)$$

$$D_t(D_x a \cdot b) \cdot ab = D_x(D_t a \cdot b) \cdot ab, \quad (2.1.9b)$$

$$D_t(D_x^2 a \cdot b) \cdot ab = D_x[(D_x D_t a \cdot b) \cdot ab + (D_t a \cdot b) \cdot (D_x a \cdot b)], \quad (2.1.9c)$$

$$(D_x a \cdot b)cd - ab(D_x c \cdot d) = (D_x a \cdot c)bd - ac(D_x b \cdot d), \quad (2.1.9d)$$

$$(D_x^2 a \cdot b)cd - ab(D_x^2 c \cdot d) = D_x[(D_x a \cdot d) \cdot cb + ad \cdot (D_x c \cdot b)], \quad (2.1.9e)$$

$$(D_x^4 a \cdot a)cc - aa(D_x^4 c \cdot c) = 2D_x[(D_x^3 a \cdot c) \cdot ca + 3(D_x^2 a \cdot c) \cdot (D_x c \cdot a)], \quad (2.1.9f)$$

$$(D_x^2 a \cdot b)cd + ab(D_x^2 c \cdot d) = (D_x^2 a \cdot d)cb + ad(D_x^2 c \cdot b) - 2(D_x a \cdot c)(D_x b \cdot d), \quad (2.1.9g)$$

$$(D_t D_x a \cdot a)cc - aa(D_t D_x c \cdot c) = 2D_x(D_t a \cdot c) \cdot ac, \quad (2.1.9h)$$

$$D_t[(D_x a \cdot b) \cdot cd + ab \cdot (D_x c \cdot d)]$$

$$= (D_t D_x a \cdot d)cb - ad(D_t D_x c \cdot b) + (D_t a \cdot d)(D_x c \cdot b) - (D_x a \cdot d)(D_t c \cdot b), \quad (2.1.9i)$$

$$(D_x a \cdot b)cd + ab(D_x c \cdot d) = (D_x a \cdot d)cb + ad(D_x c \cdot b), \quad (2.1.9j)$$

$$(D_x^3 a \cdot b)cd + ab(D_x^3 c \cdot d) = (D_x^3 a \cdot d)cb + ad(D_x^3 c \cdot b) - 3D_x(D_x a \cdot c) \cdot (D_x b \cdot d), \quad (2.1.9k)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & (D_x^3 D_t a \cdot a)cc - aa(D_x^3 d_t c \cdot c) + 3[(D_x D_t a \cdot a)(D_x^2 c \cdot c) - (D_x^2 a \cdot a)(D_x D_t c \cdot c)] \\ & = 2D_t[(D_x^3 a \cdot c) \cdot ca + 3(D_x^2 a \cdot c) \cdot (D_x c \cdot a)], \end{aligned} \quad (2.1.9l)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & (D_x^3 D_t a \cdot a)cc - aa(D_x^3 D_t c \cdot c) + (D_x^2 a \cdot a)(D_x D_t c \cdot c) - (D_x D_t a \cdot a)(D_x^2 c \cdot c) \\ & = 2D_x[(D_x^2 D_t a \cdot c) \cdot ca + 2(D_x D_t a \cdot c) \cdot (D_x c \cdot a) + (D_x^2 a \cdot c) \cdot (D_t c \cdot a)], \end{aligned} \quad (2.1.9m)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & [\exp(\delta D_t + \epsilon D_x) a \cdot b][\exp(-\delta D_t + \epsilon D_x) c \cdot d] = \exp(\epsilon D_x)[\exp(\delta D_t) a \cdot c] \cdot [\exp(\delta D_t) d \cdot b] \\ & = \exp(\delta D_t)[\exp(\epsilon D_x) a \cdot d] \cdot [\exp(\epsilon D_x) c \cdot b], \end{aligned} \quad (2.1.9n)$$

$$\exp(\delta D_t)[\exp(2\epsilon D_x) a \cdot b] \cdot cd = \exp(\epsilon D_x)[\exp(\epsilon D_x + \delta D_t) a \cdot d] \cdot [\exp(\epsilon D_x - \delta D_t) c \cdot b], \quad (2.1.9o)$$

$$\{\exp[(\epsilon + \delta) D_x] a \cdot b\} \{\exp[(\epsilon - \delta) D_x] c \cdot d\} = \exp(\delta D_x)[\exp(\epsilon D_x) a \cdot d] \cdot [\exp(\epsilon D_x) c \cdot b], \quad (2.1.9p)$$

由双线性导数的定义 (2.1.1), 可导出新的公式, 其在求新解的过程中有着重要的作用. 令

$$\xi_j = k_j x + w_j t + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad \eta_j = \alpha_j x + \beta_j t + \eta_j^{(0)} \quad (j = 1, 2), \quad (2.1.10a)$$

$$f(x, t) = e^{\xi_1} \eta_1, \quad g(x, t) = e^{\xi_2} \eta_2, \quad (2.1.10b)$$

容易算出

$$\begin{aligned} D_x^n f \cdot g & = (\partial_x - \partial_{x'})^n f(x, t) g(x', t)|_{x'=x} = \left(\sum_{j=0}^n (-1)^j C_n^j \partial_x^j \partial_{x'}^{n-j} \right) f(x, t) g(x', t)|_{x'=x} \\ & = \sum_{j=0}^n (-1)^j C_n^j (k_1^j \eta_1 e^{\xi_1} + j k_1^{j-1} \alpha_1 e^{\xi_1}) [k_2^{n-j} \eta_2 e^{\xi_2} + (n-j) k_2^{n-j-1} \alpha_2 e^{\xi_2}] \\ & = e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} \sum_{j=0}^n (-1)^j C_n^j (\eta_1 + \partial_{k_1}) k_1^j (\eta_2 + \partial_{k_2}) k_2^{n-j} \\ & = e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} (\eta_1 + \alpha_1 \partial_{k_1}) (\eta_2 + \alpha_2 \partial_{k_2}) (k_1 - k_2)^n, \end{aligned} \quad (2.1.11)$$

一般地, 记

$$\eta_j = \alpha_j x + \beta_j t + \gamma_j y + \eta_j^{(0)} \quad (j = 1, 2, \dots, m), \quad (2.1.12)$$

其中 α_j 、 β_j 和 $\eta_j^{(0)}$ 都是实数. 类似可得

$$\begin{aligned} & D_t^s D_x^r (\eta_1 \eta_2 \cdots \eta_h e^{\xi_1}) \cdot (\eta_{h+1} \eta_{h+2} \cdots \eta_m e^{\xi_2}) \\ & = e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} \prod_{p=1}^h (\eta_p + \alpha_p \partial_{k_1} + \beta_p \partial_{\omega_1}) \prod_{q=h+1}^m (\eta_q + \alpha_q \partial_{k_2} + \beta_q \partial_{\omega_2}) (\omega_1 - \omega_2)^s (k_1 - k_2)^r. \end{aligned} \quad (2.1.13)$$

若记

$$\xi_j = k_j (\omega_j t + x + p_j y) + \xi_j^{(0)} \quad (j = 1, 2), \quad (2.1.14)$$

可得

$$\begin{aligned} & D_t^i D_x^r D_y^s (\eta_1 \eta_2 \cdots \eta_h e^{\xi_1} \cdot \eta_{h+1} \eta_{h+2} \cdots \eta_m e^{\xi_2}), \\ &= e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} \prod_{p=1}^h (\eta_p + \beta_p \partial_{\lambda_1} + \alpha_p \partial_{k_1} + \gamma_p \partial_{\rho_1}) \prod_{q=h+1}^m (\eta_q + \beta_q \partial_{\lambda_2} + \alpha_q \partial_{k_2} + \gamma_q \partial_{\rho_2}) \\ & \quad (\lambda_1 - \lambda_2)^i (k_1 - k_2)^r (\rho_1 - \rho_2)^s, \end{aligned} \quad (2.1.15)$$

其中 $\partial_{k_j} = \frac{\partial}{\partial k_j}$, $\partial_{\lambda_j} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda_j}$, $\partial_{\rho_j} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho_j}$, $\lambda_j = k_j \omega_j$, $\rho_j = k_j p_j$, ($j = 1, 2$).

如果

$$\eta_j = \alpha_j t + \beta_j n + \eta_j^{(0)}, \quad \xi_l = \omega_l t + k_l n + \xi_l^{(0)}, \quad (j = 1, 2, \dots, r), \quad (l = 1, 2), \quad (2.1.16)$$

则有

$$\begin{aligned} & D_t^r (\eta_1 \eta_2 \cdots \eta_h e^{\xi_1} \cdot \eta_{h+1} \eta_{h+2} \cdots \eta_m e^{\xi_2}) \\ &= e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} \prod_{p=1}^h (\eta_p + \alpha_p \partial_{\omega_1}) \prod_{q=h+1}^m (\eta_q + \alpha_q \partial_{\omega_2}) (\omega_1 - \omega_2)^r. \end{aligned} \quad (2.1.17)$$

公式 (2.1.13) ($\gamma_j = 0$) 在计算 KdV, mKdV 和 sine-Gordon 等方程 [52]-[54] 的新解中起着很重要的作用, (2.1.15) 和 (2.1.17) 分别在 KP 和非线性自偶网格方程, Toda 链方程 [51, 55] 的新解中发挥着重要的作用.

2.2 KP 方程的新解

给定 KP 方程

$$(u_t + 6uu_x + u_{xxx})_x + 3\sigma^2 u_{yy} = 0, \quad \sigma^2 = \pm 1 \quad (2.2.1)$$

作变换

$$u(x, y, t) = 2[\ln f(x, y, t)]_{xx}, \quad (2.2.2)$$

方程 (2.2.1) 化为

$$f_{xt}f - f_t f_x + f f_{xxxx} - 4f_x f_{xxx} + 3f_{xx}^2 + 3\sigma^2 (f f_{yy} - f_y^2) = 0. \quad (2.2.3)$$

利用定义 (2.1.1), 方程 (2.2.3) 可写成双线性导数的形式

$$(D_x D_t + D_x^4 + 3\sigma^2 D_y^2) f \cdot f = 0. \quad (2.2.4)$$

按照一般求解的过程, 设 $f(x, y, t)$ 可按 ϵ 展成级数形式

$$f(x, y, t) = 1 + f^{(1)}\epsilon + f^{(2)}\epsilon^2 + f^{(3)}\epsilon^3 + \dots, \quad (2.2.5)$$

将这个展开式代入 (2.2.4), 并比较 ϵ 的同次幂系数给出

$$f_{xt}^{(1)} + f_{xxxx}^{(1)} + 3\sigma^2 f_{yy}^{(1)} = 0, \quad (2.2.6a)$$

$$2(f_{xt}^{(2)} + f_{xxxx}^{(2)} + 3\sigma^2 f_{yy}^{(2)}) = -(D_x D_t + D_x^4 + 3\sigma^2 D_y^2) f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)}, \quad (2.2.6b)$$

$$f_{xt}^{(3)} + f_{xxxx}^{(3)} + 3\sigma^2 f_{yy}^{(3)} = -(D_x D_t + D_x^4 + 3\sigma^2 D_y^2) f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)}, \quad (2.2.6c)$$

.....

如果取 $f^{(1)}$ 的形式

$$f^{(1)} = \sum_{j=1}^N e^{\xi_j}, \quad \xi_j = k_j(\omega_j t + x + p_j y) + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad (2.2.7)$$

利用公式 (2.1.5e), 则可算得到 KP 方程的 N 孤子解为

$$u = 2 \left\{ \ln \left[\sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp \left(\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j \xi_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl} \right) \right] \right\}_{xx}, \quad (2.2.8a)$$

$$e^{A_{jl}} = \frac{(k_j - k_l)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_j - p_l)^2}{(k_j + k_l)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_j + p_l)^2}, \quad \omega_j = -k_j^2 - 3\sigma^2 p_j^2, \quad (2.2.8b)$$

其中单孤子解和双孤子解的表达式分别为

$$u = \frac{k_1^2}{2} \operatorname{sech}^2 \left[\frac{k_1}{2} (\omega_1 t + x + p_1 y) + \frac{\xi_1^{(0)}}{2} \right], \quad (2.2.9a)$$

$$u = 2 \left[\ln(1 + e^{\xi_1} + e^{\xi_2} + e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2 + A_{12}}) \right]_{xx}. \quad (2.2.9b)$$

如果 $f^{(1)}$ 具有形式

$$f^{(1)} = \sum_{j=1}^N \eta_j e^{\xi_j}, \quad \eta_j = \alpha_j t + \beta_j x + \gamma_j y + \eta_j^{(0)}, \quad \gamma_j = \beta_j p_j. \quad (2.2.10)$$

由公式 (2.1.15) 则可得到 KP 方程的新解.

当 $N = 1$ 时, 取

$$f^{(1)} = \eta_1 e^{\xi_1}, \quad \gamma_1 = \beta_1 p_1, \quad (2.2.11)$$

将此 $f^{(1)}$ 代入 (2.2.6) 可以解得

$$f^{(2)} = -\frac{\beta_1^2}{4k_1^2} e^{2\xi_1}, \quad \omega_1 = -k_1^2 - 3\sigma^2 p_1^2, \quad \alpha_1 = -3\beta_1(k_1^2 + \sigma^2 p_1^2), \quad (2.2.12a)$$

$$f^{(j)} = 0 \quad (j \geq 3). \quad (2.2.12b)$$

级数 (2.2.5) 被截断而取有限形式. 因此 KP 方程的新单孤子解为

$$u = 2 \left[\ln(1 + \eta_1 e^{\xi_1} - \frac{\beta_1^2}{4k_1^2} e^{2\xi_1}) \right]_{xx}. \quad (2.2.13)$$

当 $N = 2$ 时, 我们有

$$f^{(1)} = \eta_1 e^{\xi_1} + \eta_2 e^{\xi_2}, \quad \gamma_j = \beta_j p_j \quad (j = 1, 2), \quad (2.2.14)$$

利用公式 (2.1.15), 在方程 (2.2.6) 中经过大量的运算可得到

$$\begin{aligned} f^{(2)} = & -\frac{\beta_1^2}{4k_1^2} e^{2\xi_1} - \frac{\beta_2^2}{4k_2^2} e^{2\xi_2} + \frac{(k_1 - k_2)^2 - \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2}{(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2} \eta_1 \eta_2 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} \\ & + 4\beta_2 k_1 \frac{-(k_1^2 - k_2^2) + \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2}{[(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2]^2} \eta_1 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} \\ & + 4\beta_1 k_2 \frac{(k_1^2 - k_2^2) + \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2}{[(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2]^2} \eta_2 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} \\ & + 4\beta_1 \beta_2 \frac{(k_1 + k_2)^2(k_1^2 + k_2^2 - 4k_1 k_2) - 2\sigma^2 k_1 k_2 (p_1 - p_2)^2 - (p_1 - p_2)^4}{[(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2]^3} e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2}, \quad (2.2.15a) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} f^{(3)} = & -\frac{\beta_1^2}{4k_1^2} \left[\frac{(k_1 - k_2)^2 - \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2}{(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2} \right]^2 \eta_2 e^{2\xi_1 + \xi_2} \\ & + 2\beta_1^2 \beta_2 \frac{(k_1 - k_2)^3(k_1 + k_2) - 2\sigma^2 k_1(k_1 - k_2)(p_1 - p_2)^2 + (p_1 - p_2)^4}{k_1 [(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2]^3} e^{2\xi_1 + \xi_2} \\ & - \frac{\beta_2^2}{4k_2^2} \left[\frac{(k_1 - k_2)^2 - \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2}{(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2} \right]^2 \eta_1 e^{\xi_1 + 2\xi_2} \\ & - 2\beta_1 \beta_2^2 \frac{(k_1 - k_2)^3(k_1 + k_2) - 2\sigma^2 k_2(k_1 - k_2)(p_1 - p_2)^2 - (p_1 - p_2)^4}{k_2 [(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2]^3} e^{\xi_1 + 2\xi_2}, \quad (2.2.15b) \end{aligned}$$

$$f^{(4)} = \frac{\beta_1^2 \beta_2^2}{16k_1^2 k_2^2} \left[\frac{(k_1 - k_2)^2 - \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2}{(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2(p_1 - p_2)^2} \right]^4 e^{2\xi_1 + 2\xi_2}, \quad (2.2.15c)$$

$$\omega_j = -k_j^2 - 3\sigma^2 p_j^2, \quad \alpha_j = -3\beta_j(k_j^2 + \sigma^2 p_j^2) \quad (j = 1, 2), \quad (2.2.15d)$$

$$f^{(j)} = 0 \quad (j \geq 5). \quad (2.2.15e)$$

所以 KP 方程的新双孤子解为

$$u = 2 \ln[1 + f^{(1)} + f^{(2)} + f^{(3)} + f^{(4)}]_{xx}. \quad (2.2.16)$$

如果一般取 $f^{(1)}$ 的表达式为 (2.2.10), 我们可以猜测出新多孤子解的一般公式, 其中 f 的表达式为

$$f = \sum_{\mu=0,1,2} \prod_{j=1}^N \left[\left(-\frac{\beta_j^2}{4k_j^2} \right)^{\frac{\mu_j(\mu_j-1)}{2}} (\beta_j \partial_{k_j} + \eta_j^{(0)})^{\mu_j(2-\mu_j)} \exp\left(\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j \xi_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl} \right) \right], \quad (2.2.17)$$

其中 $\omega_j = -k_j^2 - 3\sigma^2 p_j^2$, 对 μ 的求和应取过 $\mu_j = 0, 1, 2$ ($j = 1, 2, \dots, N$) 的所有一切可能的组合. 当 $\beta_j = 0, \gamma_j = 0$ 和 $\eta_j^{(0)} = 1$ ($j = 1, 2, \dots, N$) 时, 则新 N 孤子解与经典 N 孤子解 (2.2.8) 是一致的.

当放弃假设条件 $\gamma_j = \beta_j p_j$ 时, 则可生成更一般的新 N 孤子解, 事实上若 $f^{(1)}$ 具有形式

$$f^{(1)} = \sum_{j=1}^N \eta_j e^{\xi_j}. \quad (2.2.18)$$

类似于上述计算的过程我们可以导出单孤子解

$$u = 2 \left[\ln \left(1 + e^{\xi_1} \eta_1 - \frac{k_1^2 \beta_1^2 - \sigma^2 (\beta_1 p_1 - \gamma_1)^2}{4k_1^4} e^{2\xi_1} \right) \right]_{xx}, \quad (2.2.19a)$$

其中

$$\eta_1 = \beta_1 x + \gamma_1 y + (-3\beta_1 k_1^2 + 3\sigma^2 \beta_1 p_1^2 - 6\sigma^2 \gamma_1 p_1) t. \quad (2.2.19b)$$

和双孤子解, 其中 f 的表达式为

$$f^{(1)} = \eta_1 e^{\xi_1} + \eta_2 e^{\xi_2}, \quad (2.2.20a)$$

$$\begin{aligned} f^{(2)} = & -\frac{k_1^2 \beta_1^2 - \sigma^2 (\beta_1 p_1 - \gamma_1)^2}{4k_1^4} e^{2\xi_1} - \frac{k_2^2 \beta_2^2 - \sigma^2 (\beta_2 p_2 - \gamma_2)^2}{4k_2^4} e^{2\xi_2} \\ & + \frac{(k_1 - k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2}{(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2} \eta_1 \eta_2 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} \\ & - 4k_1 \frac{\beta_2 (k_1^2 - k_2^2) - \sigma^2 \beta_2 (p_1 - p_2) (p_1 - 3p_2) - 2\sigma^2 \gamma_2 (p_1 - p_2)}{[(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2]^2} \eta_1 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} \\ & + 4k_2 \frac{\beta_1 (k_1^2 - k_2^2) + \sigma^2 \beta_1 (p_1 - p_2) (3p_1 - p_2) - 2\sigma^2 \gamma_1 (p_1 - p_2)}{[(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2]^2} \eta_2 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} \\ & + \left[\frac{\beta_1 \beta_2 (k_1 + k_2)^2 (k_1^2 + k_2^2 - 4k_1 k_2)}{[(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2]^2} \right. \\ & + 8\sigma^2 \beta_1 \beta_2 \frac{k_1^2 (3p_1 p_2 - 3p_2^2 + p_1^2) + k_2^2 (3p_1 p_2 - 3p_1^2 + p_2^2) + k_1 k_2 (8p_1 p_2 - 3p_1^2 - 3p_2^2)}{[(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2]^3} \\ & + 8\sigma^2 (k_1 + k_2) \frac{\beta_1 \gamma_2 (-4k_1 p_1 + 3k_1 p_2 p_2 k_2) + \beta_2 \gamma_1 (-4k_2 p_2 + 3k_2 p_1 - p_1 k_1)}{[(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2]^3} \\ & \left. + 4 \frac{2\gamma_1 \gamma_2 [\sigma^2 (k_1 + k_2)^2 + 3(p_1 - p_2)^2] + 3\beta_1 \beta_2 (4p_1 p_2 - p_1^2 p_2^2)}{[(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2]^3} \right] e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2}, \quad (2.2.20b) \\ f^{(3)} = & -\frac{k_1^2 \beta_1^2 - \sigma^2 (\beta_1 p_1 - \gamma_1)^2}{4k_1^4} \left[\frac{(k_1 - k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2}{(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2} \right]^2 \eta_2 e^{2\xi_1 + \xi_2} \\ & - 2 \frac{k_1^2 \beta_1^2 - \sigma^2 (\beta_1 p_1 - \gamma_1)^2}{k_1^3} \frac{(k_1 - k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2}{[(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2]^3} \\ & \times [\beta_2 (k_2^2 - k_1^2) + \beta_2 \sigma^2 (3p_2 - p_1) (p_2 - p_1) + 2\gamma_2 \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)] e^{2\xi_1 + \xi_2} \\ & - \frac{k_2^2 \beta_2^2 - \sigma^2 (\beta_2 p_2 - \gamma_2)^2}{4k_2^4} \left[\frac{(k_1 - k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2}{(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2} \right]^2 \eta_1 e^{\xi_1 + 2\xi_2} \end{aligned}$$

$$-2 \frac{k_2^2 \beta_2^2 - \sigma^2 (\beta_2 p_2 - \gamma_2)^2}{k_2^3} \frac{(k_1 - k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2}{[(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2]^3} \times [\beta_1 (k_1^2 - k_2^2) + \beta_1 \sigma^2 (3p_1 - p_2)(p_1 - p_2) - 2\gamma_1 \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)] e^{\xi_1 + 2\xi_2}, \quad (2.2.20c)$$

$$f^{(4)} = \frac{k_1^2 \beta_1^2 - \sigma^2 (\beta_1 p_1 - \gamma_1)^2}{4k_1^4} \frac{k_2^2 \beta_2^2 - \sigma^2 (\beta_2 p_2 - \gamma_2)^2}{4k_2^4} \left[\frac{(k_1 - k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2}{(k_1 + k_2)^2 - \sigma^2 (p_1 - p_2)^2} \right]^4 e^{2\xi_1 + 2\xi_2}, \quad (2.2.20d)$$

$$\eta_j = \beta_j x + \gamma_j y + (-3\beta_j k_j^2 + 3\sigma^2 \beta_j p_j^2 - 6\sigma^2 \gamma_j p_j) t, \quad (2.2.20e)$$

$$f^{(j)} = 0 \quad (j \geq 5). \quad (2.2.20f)$$

一般地, 我们有

$$f = \sum_{\mu=0,1,2} \left[\prod_{j=1}^N \left(\frac{-k_j^2 \beta_j^2 - \sigma^2 (\beta_j p_j - \gamma_j)^2}{4k_j^4} \right)^{\frac{\mu_j(\mu_j-1)}{2}} (\beta_j \partial_{k_j} + \gamma_j \partial_{p_j} + \eta_j^{(0)})^{\mu_j(2-\mu_j)} \times \exp \left(\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j \xi_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl} \right) \right], \quad (2.2.21a)$$

令 $\rho_j = k_j p_j$, 有

$$\xi_j = k_j x + \rho_j y + (-k_j^3 - 3\sigma^2 \frac{\rho_j^2}{k_j}) t, \quad e^{A_{jl}} = \frac{(k_j - k_l)^2 - \sigma^2 (\frac{\rho_j}{k_j} - \frac{\rho_l}{k_l})^2}{(k_j + k_l)^2 - \sigma^2 (\frac{\rho_j}{k_j} - \frac{\rho_l}{k_l})^2}, \quad (2.2.21b)$$

其中对 μ 的求和应取过 $\mu_j = 0, 1, 2$ ($j = 1, 2, \dots, N$) 的所有一切可能的组合. 当 $\beta_j = 0, \gamma_j = 0$ 和 $\eta_j^{(0)} = 1$ ($j = 1, 2, \dots, N$) 时, 则新 N 孤子解恢复到经典 N 孤子解 (2.2.8). 而当 $\gamma_j = \beta_j p_j$ ($j = 1, 2, \dots, N$) 时 (2.2.21) 化为 (2.2.17).

2.3 非线性自偶网格方程的新解

我们考虑非线性自偶网格方程

$$\begin{cases} \frac{1}{1+V_n^2} V_{n,t} = I_n - I_{n+1}, \\ \frac{1}{1+I_n^2} I_{n,t} = V_{n-1} - V_n, \end{cases} \quad (2.3.1)$$

其中 V_n, I_n 分别表示电压和电流. 令

$$V_n = \frac{\partial \phi_n}{\partial t}, \quad (2.3.2a)$$

$$I_n = \frac{\partial \psi_n}{\partial t}. \quad (2.3.2b)$$

在 (2.3.1) 式两端对 t 积分, 可得下列关系式

$$\frac{\partial \phi_n}{\partial t} = \tan(\psi_n - \psi_{n+1}), \quad (2.3.3a)$$

$$\frac{\partial \psi_n}{\partial t} = \tan(\phi_{n-1} - \phi_n). \quad (2.3.3b)$$

(2.3.3a) 对 t 求导, 并利用 (2.3.3b), 我们有方程

$$\phi_{n,tt} = (1 + \phi_{n,t}^2)[\tan(\phi_{n-1} - \phi_n) - \tan(\phi_n - \phi_{n+1})]. \quad (2.3.4)$$

作变换

$$\phi_n = \frac{i}{2} \ln \frac{\bar{f}_n}{f_n}, \quad (2.3.5)$$

由双线性导数 (2.1.1) 和双曲余弦算子 (2.1.4) 的定义, 方程 (2.3.4) 可写为双线性形式

$$[D_t^2 - 2(\cosh D_n - 1)]f_n \cdot f_n = 0, \quad (2.3.6a)$$

$$[D_t^2 + 2(\cosh D_n - 1)]\bar{f}_n \cdot f_n = 0, \quad (2.3.6b)$$

其中 \bar{f}_n 表示 f_n 的共轭.

设 f_n 有展开式

$$f_n = 1 + \varepsilon f_n^{(1)} + \varepsilon^2 f_n^{(2)} + \dots \quad (2.3.7)$$

将其代入 (2.3.6) 并比较 ε 的同次幂系数, 容易得

$$f_{n,tt}^{(1)} = 2(\cosh D_n - 1)f_n^{(1)} \cdot 1, \quad (2.3.8a)$$

$$f_{n,tt}^{(2)} = -\frac{1}{2}D_t^2 f_n^{(1)} \cdot f_n^{(1)} + (\cosh D_n - 1)(2f_n^{(2)} \cdot 1 + f_n^{(1)} \cdot f_n^{(1)}), \quad (2.3.8b)$$

$$f_{n,tt}^{(3)} = -D_t^2 f_n^{(1)} \cdot f_n^{(2)} + 2(\cosh D_n - 1)(f_n^{(3)} \cdot 1 + f_n^{(1)} \cdot f_n^{(2)}), \quad (2.3.8c)$$

.....,

和

$$f_{n,tt}^{(1)} + \bar{f}_{n,tt}^{(1)} = -2(\cosh D_n - 1)(\bar{f}_n^{(1)} \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot f_n^{(1)}), \quad (2.3.9a)$$

$$f_{n,tt}^{(2)} + \bar{f}_{n,tt}^{(2)} = -D_t^2 \bar{f}_n^{(1)} \cdot f_n^{(1)} - 2(\cosh D_n - 1)(\bar{f}_n^{(2)} \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot f_n^{(2)} + \bar{f}_n^{(1)} \cdot f_n^{(1)}), \quad (2.3.9b)$$

$$\begin{aligned} f_{n,tt}^{(3)} + \bar{f}_{n,tt}^{(3)} &= -D_t^2(\bar{f}_n^{(1)} \cdot f_n^{(2)} + \bar{f}_n^{(2)} \cdot f_n^{(1)}) \\ &\quad - 2(\cosh D_n - 1)(\bar{f}_n^{(3)} \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot f_n^{(3)} + \bar{f}_n^{(1)} \cdot f_n^{(2)} + \bar{f}_n^{(2)} \cdot f_n^{(1)}), \end{aligned} \quad (2.3.9b)$$

.....

若取

$$f_n^{(1)} = \sum_{j=1}^N e^{\xi_j + \frac{\pi}{2}i}, \quad \xi_j = \omega_j t + k_j n + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad \omega_j, \xi_j^{(0)} \in R. \quad (2.3.10)$$

则得经典 N 孤子解, 其中 f 的表达式为

$$f = \sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j \left(\xi_j + \frac{\pi}{2}i\right) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl}\right], \quad (2.3.11a)$$

$$e^{A_{jl}} = \frac{\sinh^2 \frac{k_j - k_l}{4}}{\sinh^2 \frac{k_j + k_l}{4}}, \quad \omega_j = 2 \sinh \frac{k_j}{2}. \quad (2.3.11b)$$

下面我们求非线性自偶网格方程的新解, 取

$$f_n^{(1)} = \sum_{j=1}^N \eta_j e^{\xi_j + \frac{\pi}{2}i}, \quad (2.3.12a)$$

$$\eta_j = \alpha_j t + \beta_j n + \eta_j^{(0)}, \quad \xi_j = \omega_j t + k_j n + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad \alpha_j, \beta_j, \eta_j^{(0)}, k_j, \omega_j, \xi_j^{(0)} \in R, \quad (2.3.12b)$$

利用公式 (2.1.17), 我们就可得到方程的新解.

当 $N = 1$ 时

$$f_n^{(1)} = \eta_1 e^{\xi_1 + \frac{\pi}{2}i}, \quad (2.3.13)$$

由等式 (2.3.8-9) 算得

$$f_n^{(1)} = \eta_1 e^{\xi_1 + \frac{\pi}{2}i}, \quad \omega_1 = 2 \sinh \frac{k_1}{2}, \quad \alpha_1 = \beta_1 \cosh \frac{k_1}{2}, \quad (2.3.14a)$$

$$f_n^{(2)} = -\frac{\beta_1^2}{16 \sinh^2 \frac{k_1}{2}} e^{2\xi_1 + \pi i}, \quad (2.3.14b)$$

$$f_n^{(j)} = 0 \quad (j \geq 3), \quad (2.3.14c)$$

因此单孤子解为

$$\phi_n = \arctan \frac{\eta_1 e^{\xi_1}}{1 + \frac{\beta_1^2 e^{2\xi_1}}{16 \sinh^2 \frac{k_1}{2}}}. \quad (2.3.15)$$

同理当 $N = 2$ 时, 给出

$$f_n^{(1)} = \eta_1 e^{\xi_1 + \frac{\pi}{2}i} + \eta_2 e^{\xi_2 + \frac{\pi}{2}i}, \quad \omega_j = 2 \sinh \frac{k_j}{2}, \quad \alpha_j = \beta_j \cosh \frac{k_j}{2}, \quad (j = 1, 2), \quad (2.3.16a)$$

$$f_n^{(2)} = -\frac{\beta_1^2}{16 \sinh^2 \frac{k_1}{2}} e^{2\xi_1 + \pi i} - \frac{\beta_2^2}{16 \sinh^2 \frac{k_2}{2}} e^{2\xi_2 + \pi i} + \left[\frac{\sinh^2 \frac{k_1 - k_2}{4}}{\sinh^2 \frac{k_1 + k_2}{4}} \eta_1 \eta_2 - \frac{\beta_2 \sinh \frac{k_1}{2} \sinh \frac{k_1 - k_2}{4}}{2 \sinh^3 \frac{k_1 + k_2}{4}} \eta_1 \right. \\ \left. + \frac{\beta_1 \sinh \frac{k_2}{2} \sinh \frac{k_1 - k_2}{4}}{2 \sinh^3 \frac{k_1 + k_2}{4}} \eta_2 + \frac{\beta_1 \beta_2}{8} \frac{2 \sinh^2 \frac{k_1 - k_2}{4} - \sinh \frac{k_1}{2} \sinh \frac{k_2}{2}}{\sinh^4 \frac{k_1 + k_2}{4}} \right] e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2 + \pi i}, \quad (2.3.16b)$$

$$f_n^{(3)} = \left[-\frac{\beta_1^2}{16 \sinh^2 \frac{k_1}{2}} \frac{\sinh^4 \frac{k_1 - k_2}{4}}{\sinh^4 \frac{k_1 + k_2}{4}} \eta_2 + \frac{\beta_1^2 \beta_2}{16 \sinh \frac{k_1}{2} \sinh^5 \frac{k_1 + k_2}{4}} \right] e^{2\xi_1 + \xi_2 + \frac{3\pi}{2}i} \\ + \left[-\frac{\beta_2^2}{16 \sinh^2 \frac{k_2}{2}} \frac{\sinh^4 \frac{k_1 - k_2}{4}}{\sinh^4 \frac{k_1 + k_2}{4}} \eta_1 - \frac{\beta_1 \beta_2^2}{16 \sinh \frac{k_2}{2} \sinh^5 \frac{k_1 + k_2}{4}} \right] e^{\xi_1 + 2\xi_2 + \frac{3\pi}{2}i}, \quad (2.3.16c)$$

$$f_n^{(4)} = \frac{\beta_1^2 \beta_2^2}{16^2 \sinh^2 \frac{k_1}{2} \sinh^2 \frac{k_2}{2}} \frac{\sinh^8 \frac{k_1 - k_2}{4}}{\sinh^8 \frac{k_1 + k_2}{4}} e^{2\xi_1 + 2\xi_2 + 2\pi i}, \quad (2.3.16d)$$

$$f_n^{(j)} = 0, \quad (j \geq 5). \quad (2.3.16e)$$

如此继续下去, 一般地我们有

$$f_n = \sum_{\mu=0,1,2} \left[\prod_{j=1}^N \left(\frac{\beta_j}{4i \sinh \frac{k_j}{2}} \right)^{\mu_j(\mu_j-1)} (\beta_j \partial_{k_j} + \eta_j^{(0)})^{\mu_j(2-\mu_j)} \exp \left\{ \sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j (\xi_j + \frac{\pi}{2} i) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl} \right\} \right], \quad (2.3.17a)$$

$$\omega_j = 2 \sinh \frac{k_j}{2}, \quad e^{A_{jl}} = \frac{\sinh^2 \frac{k_j - k_l}{4}}{\sinh^2 \frac{k_j + k_l}{4}} \quad (2.3.17b)$$

如果取 $\beta_j = 0$ 和 $\eta_j^{(0)} = 1$, 则 (2.3.17) 变为 (2.3.11).

2.4 Toda 链方程的新解

一维原子链的动力学方程组 [123]

$$\frac{d^2 x_n}{dt^2} = e^{-(x_n - x_{n-1})} - e^{-(x_{n+1} - x_n)}, \quad (2.4.1)$$

其中 $x_n(t)$ 表示晶格中第 n 个原子相对于平衡位置的位移, n 取所有的整数. 由 (2.4.1) 所刻划的动力系统称为 Toda 链. 令 $x_n - x_{n-1} = y_n$, 方程链 (2.4.1) 化成

$$\frac{d^2 y_n}{dt^2} = -e^{-y_{n+1}} + 2e^{-y_n} - e^{-y_{n-1}}. \quad (2.4.2)$$

可见

$$y_n = -\ln f_{n+1} + 2 \ln f_n - \ln f_{n-1}. \quad (2.4.3)$$

将其代入 (2.4.2) 得

$$\frac{d^2}{dt^2} \ln f_n = e^{-y_n} - 1 = \frac{f_{n+1} f_{n-1}}{f_n^2} - 1, \quad (2.4.4)$$

或写成

$$D_t^2 f_n \cdot f_n = 2(f_{n+1} f_{n-1} - f_n^2). \quad (2.4.5)$$

应用双曲余弦算子 (2.1.4), 方程 (2.4.5) 可写为

$$D_t^2 f_n \cdot f_n = 2(\cosh D_n - 1) f_n \cdot f_n, \quad (2.4.6)$$

这就是 Toda 链的双线性导数方程, 其恰好与 (2.3.6a) 是一致的.

类似于非线性自偶网格方程, 把 f 展成 (2.3.7), 并代入 (2.3.6a) 比较 ε 的同次幂系数可以得到 (2.3.8). 一般地我们取

$$f_n^{(1)} = e^{\xi_1} + e^{\xi_2} + \cdots + e^{\xi_N}, \quad \xi_j = \omega_j t + k_j n + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad (2.4.7)$$

则从 (2.3.8) 即可导出 Toda 链方程的多孤子解

$$e^{-\psi_n} - 1 = \left[\ln \left(\sum_{\mu=0,1} e^{j=1} \sum_{\mu=0,1}^N \mu_j \xi_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl} \right) \right]_{tt}, \quad (2.4.8)$$

其中对 μ 的求和是取过 $\mu_j = 0, 1$ ($j = 1, 2, \dots, N$) 之所有可能的组合, 且 $e^{A_{jl}}$ 与 ω_j 表示为 (2.3.11b).

若取 $f_n^{(1)}$ 为

$$f_n^{(1)} = \sum_{j=1}^N \eta_j e^{\xi_j}, \quad (2.4.9)$$

其中 η_j 定义为 (2.3.12b), 则从 (2.3.8) 可算得到 Toda 链方程的新解. 新单孤子解为

$$e^{-\psi_n} - 1 = \left[\ln \left(1 + \eta_1 e^{\xi_1} - \frac{\beta_1^2}{16 \sinh^2 \frac{k_1}{2}} e^{2\xi_1} \right) \right]_{tt}, \quad (2.4.10a)$$

$$\omega_1 = 2 \sinh \frac{k_1}{2}, \quad \alpha_1 = \beta_1 \cosh \frac{k_1}{2}. \quad (2.4.10b)$$

而对应于新 N 孤子解之 f_n 表示为

$$f_n = \sum_{\mu=0,1,2} \left[\prod_{j=1}^N \left(\frac{\beta_j}{4i \sinh \frac{k_j}{2}} \right)^{\mu_j(\mu_j-1)} (\beta_j \partial_{k_j} + \eta_j^{(0)})^{\mu_j(2-\mu_j)} \exp \left(\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j \xi_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl} \right) \right], \quad (2.4.11)$$

其中 $e^{A_{jl}}$ 与 ω_j 表达式为 (2.3.11b). 显然如果取 $\beta_j = 0$ 和 $\eta_j^{(0)} = 1$ ($j = 1, 2, \dots, N$) 新解就与原来的解 (2.4.7) 是一致的.

此外从非线性自偶网格 (2.3.17) 除去指数中的 $\frac{\pi}{2}i$, 那么它就化为 Toda 链方程的新解 (2.4.11).

2.5 非线性 Schrödinger 方程的新解

从电磁流体力学方程组出发可导出非线性 Schrödinger 方程

$$iu_t + u_{xx} + |u|^2 u = 0, \quad (2.5.1)$$

其中 u 是变量 t 与 x 的复函数, $|u|^2 = u\bar{u}$. 假设此方程的孤子解可表示成分式 $u = \frac{g}{f}$, 并且不失一般性, 分母 f 可设为实函数. 将它代入方程 (2.5.1), 则 f 与 g 满足双线性导数方程

$$(iD_t + D_x^2)g \cdot f = 0, \quad (2.5.2a)$$

$$D_x^2 f \cdot f = g\bar{g}, \quad (2.5.2b)$$

如果实函数 f 可按 ε 的偶次幂展成级数, 而复函数 g 按 ε 的奇次幂展成级数, 即

$$f(t, x) = 1 + f^{(2)}\varepsilon^2 + f^{(4)}\varepsilon^4 + \cdots + f^{(2j)}\varepsilon^{2j} + \cdots, \quad (2.5.3a)$$

$$g(t, x) = g^{(1)}\varepsilon + g^{(3)}\varepsilon^3 + \cdots + g^{(2j+1)}\varepsilon^{2j+1} + \cdots, \quad (2.5.3b)$$

则在 (2.5.2) 中令 ε 的同次幂系数相等得

$$ig_t^{(1)} + g_{xx}^{(1)} = 0, \quad (2.5.4a)$$

$$ig_t^{(3)} + g_{xx}^{(3)} = -(iD_t + D_x^2)g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)}, \quad (2.5.4b)$$

$$ig_t^{(5)} + g_{xx}^{(5)} = -(iD_t + D_x^2)(g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(4)} + g^{(3)} \cdot f^{(2)}), \quad (2.5.4c)$$

... ..;

$$2f_{xx}^{(2)} = g^{(1)}\bar{g}^{(1)}, \quad (2.5.5a)$$

$$2f_{xx}^{(4)} = -D_x^2 f^{(2)} \cdot f^{(2)} + \bar{g}^{(1)}g^{(3)} + g^{(3)}\bar{g}^{(1)}, \quad (2.5.5b)$$

$$2f_{xx}^{(6)} = -2D_x^2 f^{(2)} \cdot f^{(4)} + g^{(1)}\bar{g}^{(5)} + g^{(3)}\bar{g}^{(3)} + g^{(5)}\bar{g}^{(1)}, \quad (2.5.5c)$$

... ..

一般地, 如果取 (2.5.4a) 的解为

$$g^{(1)} = e^{\xi_1} + e^{\xi_2} + \cdots + e^{\xi_n}, \quad \xi_j = \omega_j t + k_j x + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad \omega_j = ik_j^2 \quad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, N). \quad (2.5.6)$$

则非线性 Schrödinger 方程的 N 孤子解所对应的分母与分子可表示为

$$f(t, x) = \sum_{\mu=0,1} A_1(\mu) \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^{2N} \mu_j \xi_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^{2N} \mu_j \mu_l \theta_{jl}\right], \quad (2.5.7a)$$

$$g(t, x) = \sum_{\mu=0,1} A_2(\mu) \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^{2N} \mu_j \xi_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^{2N} \mu_j \mu_l \theta_{jl}\right], \quad (2.5.7b)$$

其中

$$\xi_{N+j} = \bar{\xi}_j \quad (j = 1, 2, \cdots, N), \quad (2.5.8a)$$

$$e^{\theta_{j(N+l)}} = \frac{1}{2(k_j + \bar{k}_l)^2} \quad (j, l = 1, 2, \cdots, N), \quad (2.5.8b)$$

$$e^{\theta_{jl}} = 2(k_j - k_l)^2 \quad (j < l = 2, 3, \cdots, N), \quad (2.5.8c)$$

$$e^{\theta_{(N+j)(N+l)}} = 2(\bar{k}_j - \bar{k}_l)^2 = e^{\bar{\theta}_{jl}} \quad (j < l = 2, 3, \cdots, N). \quad (2.5.8d)$$

而 $A_1(\mu)$ 与 $A_2(\mu)$ 表示当 μ_j ($j = 1, 2, \cdots, N$) 取所有可能的 0 或 1 时, 还需分别满足条件

$$\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j = \sum_{j=1}^N \mu_{N+j}, \quad \sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j = \sum_{j=1}^N \mu_{N+j} + 1. \quad (2.5.9)$$

非线性 Schrödinger 方程的新解也是通过取

$$g = \sum_{j=1}^N \eta_j e^{\xi_j}, \quad \xi_j = k_j x + \omega_j t + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad \eta_j = \alpha_j x + \beta_j t + \eta_j^{(0)}. \quad (2.5.10)$$

从 (2.5.4) 与 (2.5.5) 逐次算得. 当 $N = 1$, 得

$$g = \eta_1 e^{\xi_1} - \frac{\alpha_1^2}{2(k_1 + \bar{k}_1)^4} \bar{\eta}_1 e^{2\xi_1 + \bar{\xi}_1} + \frac{2\alpha_1^2 \bar{\alpha}_1}{(k_1 + \bar{k}_1)^5} e^{2\xi_1 + \bar{\xi}_1}, \quad \omega_1 = ik_1^2, \quad \beta_1 = 2i\alpha_1 k_1, \quad (2.5.11a)$$

$$f = 1 + \left[\frac{1}{2(k_1 + \bar{k}_1)^2} \eta_1 \bar{\eta}_1 - \frac{\bar{\alpha}_1}{(k_1 + \bar{k}_1)^3} \eta_1 - \frac{\alpha_1}{(k_1 + \bar{k}_1)^3} \bar{\eta}_1 + \frac{3\alpha_1 \bar{\alpha}_1}{(k_1 + \bar{k}_1)^4} \right] e^{\xi_1 + \bar{\xi}_1} + \frac{\alpha_1^2 \bar{\alpha}_1^2}{4(k_1 + \bar{k}_1)^8} e^{2\xi_1 + 2\bar{\xi}_1}, \quad (2.5.11b)$$

其比 $\frac{g}{f}$ 即为非线性 Schrödinger 方程的新单孤子解. 同理可以得到双孤子解. 一般我们有

$$f = \sum_{\mu=0,1,2} A_1(\mu) \left[\prod_{j=1}^N (\alpha_j^2)^{\frac{\mu_j(\mu_j-1)}{2}} (\alpha_j \partial_{k_j} + \eta_j^{(0)})^{\mu_j(2-\mu_j)} \prod_{j=N+1}^{2N} (\bar{\alpha}_j^2)^{\frac{\mu_j(\mu_j-1)}{2}} (\bar{\alpha}_j \partial_{\bar{k}_j} + \bar{\eta}_j^{(0)})^{\mu_j(2-\mu_j)} \exp\left(\sum_{j=1}^{2N} \mu_j \xi_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \mu_j \mu_l \theta_{jl}\right) \right], \quad (2.5.12a)$$

$$g = \sum_{\mu=0,1,2} A_2(\mu) \left[\prod_{j=1}^N (2\alpha_j^2)^{\frac{\mu_j(\mu_j-1)}{2}} (\alpha_j \partial_{k_j} + \eta_j^{(0)})^{\mu_j(2-\mu_j)} \prod_{j=N+1}^{2N} (2\bar{\alpha}_j^2)^{\frac{\mu_j(\mu_j-1)}{2}} (\bar{\alpha}_j \partial_{\bar{k}_j} + \bar{\eta}_j^{(0)})^{\mu_j(2-\mu_j)} \exp\left(\sum_{j=1}^{2N} \mu_j \xi_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \mu_j \mu_l \theta_{jl}\right) \right]. \quad (2.5.12b)$$

其比即为非线性 Schrödinger 方程的新解. 若取 $\alpha_j = 0, \bar{\alpha}_l = 0, \eta_j^{(0)} = 1, \bar{\eta}_l^{(0)} = 1, (j = 1, 2, \dots, N), (l = N+1, N+2, \dots, 2N)$ 则 (2.5.12) 就化为 (2.5.7).

在附录一中给出了 KP 方程, 非线性自偶网格方程, toda 链方程新单孤子解的图形, 由图形可以看出新解具有奇异点和零点, 这恰是经典孤子解中所不具备的性质.

第三章 孤子方程 Wronskian 形式的新解

在本章中,介绍了 Wronskian 行列式的性质,并以 KP 和 Toda 链方程为例,验证了孤子方程具有 Wronskian 形式的新解.

3.1 Wronskian 行列式的性质

一组可微函数 $(\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_N)^T$ 的 N 阶 Wronskian 行列式定义为

$$W(\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_N) = \begin{vmatrix} \phi_1 & \phi_1^{(1)} & \dots & \phi_1^{(N-1)} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \phi_N & \phi_N^{(1)} & \dots & \phi_N^{(N-1)} \end{vmatrix}, \quad (3.1.1)$$

其中 $\phi_j^{(l)} = \partial^l \phi_j / \partial x^l$. 它常可以写为一种紧凑格式:

$$W = |\phi, \phi^{(1)}, \dots, \phi^{(N-1)}| = |0, 1, \dots, N-1| = |\widehat{N-1}|. \quad (3.1.2)$$

因此

$$\begin{aligned} | -1, \widehat{N-3}, N-1, N+1 | &= \begin{vmatrix} \phi_1^{(-1)} & \phi_1 & \dots & \phi_1^{(N-3)} & \phi_1^{(N-1)} & \phi_1^{(N+1)} \\ \phi_2^{(-1)} & \phi_2 & \dots & \phi_2^{(N-3)} & \phi_2^{(N-1)} & \phi_2^{(N+1)} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \phi_N^{(-1)} & \phi_N & \dots & \phi_N^{(N-3)} & \phi_N^{(N-1)} & \phi_N^{(N+1)} \end{vmatrix} \\ &= |\phi^{(-1)}, \phi, \dots, \phi^{(N-3)}, \phi^{(N-1)}, \phi^{(N+1)}| \end{aligned}$$

其中 $\phi_j^{(-1)} = \partial^{-1} \phi_j$, ∂^{-1} 为积分算子, $\partial^{-1} \partial = \partial \partial^{-1} = 1$. 更一般地,我们用 $|\hat{l}_1, l_2, \dots, l_p|$ 表示 $|\phi, \phi^{(l_1)}, \dots, \phi^{(l_1)}, \phi^{(l_2)}, \dots, \phi^{(l_p)}|$, $|\hat{h}_1, h_2, \dots, h_q|$ 表示 $|\phi^{(h_1)}, \dots, \phi^{(h_1)}, \phi^{(h_2)}, \dots, \phi^{(h_q)}|$.

Wronskian 行列式 (3.1.1) 具有这样的特点: 后一列是前一列的导数, 这使 Wronskian 行列式在按列求导的时候, 无论是过程还是结果都很方便简洁, 例如, 若记 $f = |\widehat{N-1}|$, 则有 $f_x = |\widehat{N-2}, N|$, $f_{xx} = |\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+1|, \dots$. 事实上, 依照行列式按列求导的法则, N 阶行列式的一阶导数是逐列求导的 N 个行列式的和. 而对于一个 Wronskian 行列式而言, 则前 $N-1$ 列中任一列的导数均与次列元素完全一致其值为零. 因此, 在 Wronskian 行列式一阶导数的和式中, 只有一项不为零. 这实际上说明, 一个 Wronskian 行列式的导数所包含的项数与行列式的阶数 N 无关, 而只依赖于导数的阶数.

将线性代数中关于行列式的一些恒等式应用到 Wronskian 行列式 (3.1.1) 上, 可以得到 Wronskian 技巧中常用到的一些恒等式.

1° 设矩阵 $A = (a_{ij})_{N \times N} = [\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_N]$. $\alpha_j = (a_{1j}, a_{2j}, \dots, a_{nj})^T$ 为 A 的列向量, 向量 $b = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_N)^T$, 则成立

$$\sum_{j=1}^N |\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{j-1}, b\alpha_j, \alpha_{j+1}, \dots, \alpha_N| = \sum_{j=1}^N b_j |A|, \quad (3.1.3)$$

其中, $b\alpha_j$ 表示 $(b_1\alpha_{1j}, b_2\alpha_{2j}, \dots, b_N\alpha_{Nj})^T$.

2° 设 Wronskian 行列式 (3.1.1) 中 ϕ_j 满足

$$\phi_{j,xx} = k_j^2 \phi_j, \quad (3.1.4a)$$

我们有

$$\left(\sum_{j=1}^N k_j^2\right) |\widetilde{N-1}| = -|\widetilde{N-3}, N-1, N| + |\widetilde{N-2}, N+1|, \quad (3.1.4b)$$

$$\left(\sum_{j=1}^N k_j^2\right) |\widetilde{N-2}, N| = -|\widetilde{N-4}, N-2, N-1, N| + |\widetilde{N-2}, N+2|, \quad (3.1.4c)$$

$$\left(\sum_{j=1}^N k_j^2\right) |\widetilde{N}| = -|\widetilde{N-2}, N, N+1| + |\widetilde{N-1}, N+2|. \quad (3.1.4d)$$

3° 若 Wronskian 行列式 (3.1.3) 满足条件 (3.1.4a), 则基于等式

$$|\widetilde{N-1}| \left\{ \left(\sum_{j=1}^N k_j^2\right) \left[\left(\sum_{j=1}^N k_j^2\right) |\widetilde{N-1}| \right] \right\} = \left[\left(\sum_{j=1}^N k_j^2\right) |\widetilde{N-1}| \right]^2, \quad (3.1.5a)$$

可得关系式

$$\begin{aligned} & |\widetilde{N-1}| (|\widetilde{N-5}, N-3, N-2, N-1, N| - |\widetilde{N-4}, N-2, N-1, N+1| \\ & + 2|\widetilde{N-3}, N, N+1| - |\widetilde{N-3}, N-1, N+2| + |\widetilde{N-2}, N+3|) \\ & = (-|\widetilde{N-3}, N-1, N| + |\widetilde{N-2}, N+1|)^2. \end{aligned} \quad (3.1.5b)$$

4° 若记 M 为 $N \times (N-2)$ 矩阵, a, b, c 和 d 都是 N 维列向量, 则成立

$$|M, a, b||M, c, d| - |M, a, c||M, b, d| + |M, a, d||M, b, c| = \frac{1}{2} \begin{vmatrix} M & 0 & a & b & c & d \\ 0 & M & a & b & c & d \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (3.1.6)$$

5° 若记:

$$g = |\widetilde{N-1}|, \quad f = |\widetilde{N-2}, \tau|, \quad \tau = (0, \dots, 0, 1)^T, \quad (3.1.7)$$

其中 ϕ_j 满足 (3.1.4a) 式, 则基于等式

$$f \left[\left(\sum_{j=1}^N k_j^2\right) g \right] - g \left[\left(\sum_{j=1}^{N-1} k_j^2\right) f \right] = k_N^2 f g$$

可得

$$\begin{aligned} & |\widehat{N-2}, \tau|(-|\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+1|) \\ & - |\widehat{N-1}|(-|\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, \tau| + |\widehat{N-3}, N, \tau|) \\ & = k_N^2 |\widehat{N-1}| |\widehat{N-2}, \tau|; \end{aligned} \quad (3.1.8)$$

基于等式

$$f_x \left[\left(\sum_{j=1}^N k_j^2 \right) g \right] - g \left[\left(\sum_{j=1}^{N-1} k_j^2 \right) f_x \right] = k_N^2 f_x g$$

可得

$$\begin{aligned} & |\widehat{N-3}, N-1, \tau|(-|\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+1|) \\ & - |\widehat{N-1}|(-|\widehat{N-5}, N-3, N-2, N-1, \tau| + |\widehat{N-3}, N+1, \tau|) \\ & = k_N^2 |\widehat{N-1}| |\widehat{N-3}, N-1, \tau|; \end{aligned} \quad (3.1.9)$$

基于等式

$$f \left[\left(\sum_{j=1}^N k_j^2 \right) g_x \right] - g_x \left[\left(\sum_{j=1}^{N-1} k_j^2 \right) f \right] = k_N^2 f g_x$$

又得

$$\begin{aligned} & |\widehat{N-2}, \tau|(-|\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, N| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+2|) \\ & - |\widehat{N-2}, N|(-|\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, \tau| + |\widehat{N-3}, N, \tau|) \\ & = k_N^2 |\widehat{N-2}, N| |\widehat{N-2}, \tau|. \end{aligned} \quad (3.1.10)$$

对于某些离散的孤子方程, 例如 Toda 链, 非线性自偶网格方程等等, 其相应解的 Wronskian 行列式通常定义为

$$f_n = |\psi_n, \psi_n^{(1)}, \dots, \psi_n^{(N-1)}| = |0, 1, \dots, N-1| = |\widehat{N-1}|, \quad (3.1.11a)$$

$$\psi_n = \psi(n, t) = (\psi_1(n, t), \psi_2(n, t), \dots, \psi_N(n, t))^T, \quad \psi_n^{(j)} = \frac{d^j \psi_n}{dt^j}. \quad (3.1.11b)$$

6° 若 Wronskian 行列式 (3.1.11) 中 $\psi_j(n, t)$ 满足

$$\psi_{j,t}(n, t) = \psi_j(n+1, t), \quad (3.1.12)$$

则成立

$$f_{n+l} = |l, l+1, \dots, N+l-1|, l \in Z, \quad (3.1.13)$$

若 $\psi_j(n, t)$ 满足

$$(2 \cosh k_j) \psi_j(n, t) = \psi_j(n-1, t) + \psi_j(n+1, t), \quad (3.1.14)$$

则又有

$$\left(\sum_{j=1}^N 2 \cosh k_j \right) |\widehat{N-1}| = |\widehat{N-2}, N| + | -1, \widehat{N-1}|, \quad (3.1.15)$$

$$\left(\sum_{j=1}^N 2 \cosh k_j\right) |\widehat{N-2, N}| = |\widehat{N-3, N-1, N}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+1}| + |\widehat{N-1}| + | -1, \widehat{N-2, N}|. \quad (3.1.16)$$

3.2 Wronskian 形式的新解

在第二章中介绍了用 Hirota 方法得到孤子方程的新多孤子解, 但难以代入方程直接验证, 而 Wronskian 技巧却完全不同. 我们以 KP 方程 (2.2.1) ($\sigma^2 = 1$)

$$(u_t + 6uu_x + u_{xxx})_x + 3u_{yy} = 0, \quad (3.2.1)$$

和 Toda 链方程 (2.4.2) 为例, 说明这一问题.

1983 年, Freeman 和 Nimmo[57] 得到了 KP 方程 (3.1.1) 具有 Wronskian 行列式形式的解 (3.1.1), 其中 ϕ_j 满足方程

$$\phi_{j,y} = \phi_{j,xx}, \quad (3.2.2a)$$

$$\phi_{j,t} = -4\phi_{j,xxx}. \quad (3.2.2b)$$

若取 ϕ_j 为

$$\phi_j = e^{\xi_j} + (-1)^{j-1} e^{-\eta_j}, \quad \xi_j = k_j x + k_j^2 y - 4k_j^3 t, \quad \eta_j = q_j x - q_j^2 y - 4q_j^3 t, \quad (3.2.3)$$

则 Wronskian 行列式 (3.1.1) 即是 KP 方程 (3.2.1) 的线 N 孤子解. 记

$$\phi_{j,K_j} = (e^{\xi_j})_{k_j} + (-1)^j (e^{-\eta_j})_{q_j}, \quad (3.2.4)$$

容易验证 ϕ_{j,K_j} 满足方程 (3.2.2). 现在定义一个元素为 (3.2.3) 和 (3.2.4) 的 $2N$ 阶 Wronskian 行列式

$$\begin{aligned} f &= \begin{vmatrix} \phi_1 & \phi_1^{(1)} & \cdots & \phi_1^{(2N-1)} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \phi_N & \phi_N^{(1)} & \cdots & \phi_N^{(2N-1)} \\ \phi_{1,K_1} & \phi_{1,K_1}^{(1)} & \cdots & \phi_{1,K_1}^{(2N-1)} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \phi_{N,K_N} & \phi_{N,K_N}^{(1)} & \cdots & \phi_{N,K_N}^{(2N-1)} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} \phi & \phi^{(1)} & \cdots & \phi^{(2N-1)} \\ \phi_K & \phi_K^{(1)} & \cdots & \phi_K^{(2N-1)} \end{vmatrix} \\ &= \begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 & \cdots & 2N-1 \\ 0_K & 1_K & \cdots & (2N-1)_K \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} \overbrace{2N-1} & \\ \underbrace{(2N-1)_K} & \end{vmatrix}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.2.5)$$

由 Wronskian 行列式的性质, 容易算得

$$f_x = \begin{vmatrix} \overbrace{2N-2} & 2N \\ \underbrace{(2N-2)_K} & (2N)_K \end{vmatrix}, \quad (3.2.6a)$$

$$f_{xx} = \left| \begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N-1 & 2N \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-1)_K} & \underbrace{(2N)_K} \end{array} \right| + \left| \begin{array}{cc} \overbrace{2N-2} & 2N+1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-2)_K} & \underbrace{(2N+1)_K} \end{array} \right|, \quad (3.2.6b)$$

$$f_{xxx} = \left| \begin{array}{cccc} \overbrace{2N-4} & 2N-2 & 2N-1 & 2N \\ \underbrace{(2N-4)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-2)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-1)_K} & \underbrace{(2N)_K} \end{array} \right| \\ + 2 \left| \begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N-1 & 2N+1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-1)_K} & \underbrace{(2N+1)_K} \end{array} \right| + \left| \begin{array}{cc} \overbrace{2N-2} & 2N+2 \\ \underbrace{(2N-2)_K} & \underbrace{(2N+2)_K} \end{array} \right|, \quad (3.2.6c)$$

$$f_{xxxx} = \left| \begin{array}{ccccc} \overbrace{2N-5} & 2N-3 & 2N-2 & 2N-1 & 2N \\ \underbrace{(2N-5)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-2)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-1)_K} & \underbrace{(2N)_K} \end{array} \right| \\ + 3 \left| \begin{array}{cccc} \overbrace{2N-4} & 2N-2 & 2N-1 & 2N+1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-4)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-2)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-1)_K} & \underbrace{(2N+1)_K} \end{array} \right| \\ + 3 \left| \begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N-1 & 2N+2 \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-1)_K} & \underbrace{(2N+2)_K} \end{array} \right| + 2 \left| \begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N & 2N+1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & \underbrace{(2N)_K} & \underbrace{(2N+1)_K} \end{array} \right| \\ + \left| \begin{array}{cc} \overbrace{2N-2} & 2N+3 \\ \underbrace{(2N-2)_K} & \underbrace{(2N+3)_K} \end{array} \right|. \quad (3.2.6d)$$

由 (3.2.2a), 可见 Wronskian 行列式对 y 的导数可化为其列对 x 的导数, 如此给出

$$f_y = \left| \begin{array}{cc} \overbrace{2N-2} & 2N+1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-2)_K} & \underbrace{(2N+1)_K} \end{array} \right| - \left| \begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N-1 & 2N \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-1)_K} & \underbrace{(2N)_K} \end{array} \right|, \quad (3.2.7a)$$

$$f_{yy} = \left| \begin{array}{ccccc} \overbrace{2N-5} & 2N-3 & 2N-2 & 2N-1 & 2N \\ \underbrace{(2N-5)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-2)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-1)_K} & \underbrace{(2N)_K} \end{array} \right| \\ - \left| \begin{array}{cccc} \overbrace{2N-4} & 2N-2 & 2N-1 & 2N+1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-4)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-2)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-1)_K} & \underbrace{(2N+1)_K} \end{array} \right| \\ - \left| \begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N-1 & 2N+2 \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-1)_K} & \underbrace{(2N+2)_K} \end{array} \right| \\ + 2 \left| \begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N & 2N+1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & \underbrace{(2N)_K} & \underbrace{(2N+1)_K} \end{array} \right| + \left| \begin{array}{cc} \overbrace{2N-2} & 2N+3 \\ \underbrace{(2N-2)_K} & \underbrace{(2N+3)_K} \end{array} \right|. \quad (3.2.7b)$$

利用 (3.2.2b) 类似算出关于 t 的导数

$$f_t = -4 \left| \begin{array}{cccc} \overbrace{2N-4} & 2N-2 & 2N-1 & 2N \\ \underbrace{(2N-4)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-2)_K} & \underbrace{(2N-1)_K} & \underbrace{(2N)_K} \end{array} \right|$$

$$- \left[\begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N-1 & 2N+1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & (2N-1)_K & (2N+1)_K \end{array} \right] + \left[\begin{array}{cc} \overbrace{2N-2} & 2N+2 \\ \underbrace{(2N-2)_K} & (2N+2)_K \end{array} \right], \quad (3.2.8a)$$

$$f_{tx} = -4 \left[\begin{array}{ccccc} \overbrace{2N-5} & 2N-3 & 2N-2 & 2N-1 & 2N \\ \underbrace{(2N-5)_K} & (2N-3)_K & (2N-2)_K & (2N-1)_K & (2N)_K \end{array} \right] \\ + 4 \left[\begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N & 2N+1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & (2N)_K & (2N+1)_K \end{array} \right] - 4 \left[\begin{array}{cc} \overbrace{2N-2} & 2N-3 \\ \underbrace{(2N-2)_K} & (2N-3)_K \end{array} \right]. \quad (3.2.8b)$$

把 (3.2.5-8) 代入方程 (3.2.1) 的双线性形式

$$ff_{tx} - f_x f_t + ff_{xxxx} + 3f_{xx}^2 - 4f_x f_{xxx} + 3ff_{yy} - 3f_y^2 \quad (3.2.9)$$

化简之后到达

$$12 \left[\begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N-2 & 2N-1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & (2N-2)_K & (2N-1)_K \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N & 2N+1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & (2N)_K & (2N+1)_K \end{array} \right] \\ - \left[\begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N-2 & 2N \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & (2N)_K & (2N)_K \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N-1 & 2N+1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & (2N-1)_K & (2N+1)_K \end{array} \right] \\ + \left[\begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N-1 & 2N \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & (2N-1)_K & (2N)_K \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{ccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N-2 & 2N+1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & (2N-2)_K & (2N+1)_K \end{array} \right] \\ = -6 \left[\begin{array}{cccccc} \overbrace{2N-3} & 0 & 2N-2 & 2N-1 & 2N & 2N+1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & 0 & (2N-2)_K & (2N-1)_K & (2N)_K & (2N+1)_K \\ 0 & \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N-2 & 2N-1 & 2N & 2N+1 \\ 0 & \underbrace{(2N-3)_K} & (2N-2)_K & (2N-1)_K & (2N)_K & (2N+1)_K \end{array} \right] = 0. \quad (3.2.10)$$

这样就验证了 Wronskian 行列式 (3.2.5) 是 KP 方程 (3.2.1) 的解. 考虑 (3.2.5) 与第二章 KP 方程新解的关系, 当 $N=1$ 时,

$$f = \left[\begin{array}{cc} \phi_1 & \phi_1^{(1)} \\ \phi_{1,K_1} & \phi_{1,K_1}^{(1)} \end{array} \right] \\ = e^{2\xi_1} - e^{-2\eta_1} + 2(k_1 + q_1)[x + (k_1 - q_1)y - 6(k_1^2 + q_1^2)t]e^{\xi_1 - \eta_1} \\ = -e^{-2\eta_1} \{1 - e^{2\xi_1 + 2\eta_1} - 2(k_1 + q_1)[x + (k_1 - q_1)y - 6(k_1^2 + q_1^2)t]e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1}\}, \quad (3.2.11)$$

令

$$e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} = -2(k_1 + q_1)e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1}, \quad (3.2.12)$$

由此推知 KP 方程对应的新解的表达形式为

$$u = 2\{\ln[1 + (x + (k_1 + q_1)y - 6(k_1^2 + q_1^2)t)e^{\xi'_1 + \eta'_1} - \frac{1}{4(k_1 + q_1)^2}e^{2\xi'_1 + 2\eta'_1}]\}_{xx}, \quad (3.2.13)$$

其与 (2.2.13) 式是一致的. 类似的当 $N = 2$ 时, 所得的解与从 (2.2.14-15) 生成的新双孤子解一致. 一致性的一般结论仍是一个开问题.

离散 Toda 链方程 (2.4.1) 也存在 Wronskian 行列式解. 给定 Wronskian 行列式 (3.1.11), 其中 ψ_j 满足 (3.1.12) 和 (3.1.14) 式, 不难算得

$$f_{n,t} = |\widetilde{N-2, N}|, \quad f_{n,tt} = |\widetilde{N-3, N-1, N}| + |\widetilde{N-2, N+1}|, \quad (3.2.14a)$$

$$f_{n-1} = |-1, \widetilde{N-2}|, \quad f_{n+1} = |\widetilde{N}|, \quad (3.2.14b)$$

把 (3.2.14) 代入 Toda 链方程的双线性形式 (2.4.5) 给出

$$\begin{aligned} f_{n,tt}f_n - f_{n,t}^2 - f_{n-1}f_{n+1} + f_n^2 &= |\widetilde{N-2, -1, N-1}||\widetilde{N-2, 0, N}| \\ &- |\widetilde{N-2, 0, N-1}||\widetilde{N-2, -1, N}| - |\widetilde{N-2, -1, 0}||\widetilde{N-2, N-1, N}| = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (3.2.15)$$

满足条件 (3.1.12) 和 (3.1.14) 的 ψ_j 可以取为

$$\psi_j(n, t) = a_j^+ e^{k_j n + e^{k_j t}} + a_j^- e^{-k_j n + e^{-k_j t}}, \quad a_j^\pm, k_j \in R. \quad (3.2.16)$$

在 (3.1.12) 和 (3.1.14) 等式的两端分别对 k_j 求导, 则有关系式

$$(2 \sinh k_j) \psi_j(n, t) + (2 \cosh k_j) \psi_{j,k_j}(n, t) = \psi_{j,k_j}(n-1, t) + \psi_{j,k_j}(n+1, t). \quad (3.2.17a)$$

$$\psi_{j,k_j,t}(n, t) = \psi_{j,k_j}(n+1, t), \quad (3.2.17b)$$

若同样定义 $2N$ 阶行列式

$$f_n = \begin{vmatrix} \psi & \psi^{(1)} & \cdots & \psi^{(2N-1)} \\ \psi_k & \psi_k^{(1)} & \cdots & \psi_k^{(2N-1)} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 & \cdots & 2N-1 \\ 0_k & 1_k & \cdots & (2N-1)_k \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} \overbrace{2N-1} \\ \underbrace{(2N-1)_k} \end{vmatrix}, \quad (3.2.18)$$

其中 $\psi_j(n), \psi_{j,k_j}(n)$ 分别满足 (3.1.12), (3.1.14) 和 (3.2.17). 则 f_n 也是方程 (2.4.5) 的解, 事实上由 (3.2.18) 算得

$$f_{n,t} = \begin{vmatrix} \overbrace{2N-2} & 2N \\ \underbrace{(2N-2)_k} & (2N)_k \end{vmatrix}, \quad (3.2.19a)$$

$$f_{n,tt} = \begin{vmatrix} \overbrace{2N-3} & 2N-1 & 2N \\ \underbrace{(2N-3)_k} & (2N-1)_k & (2N)_k \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} \overbrace{2N-2} & 2N+1 \\ \underbrace{(2N-2)_k} & (2N+1)_k \end{vmatrix}, \quad (3.2.19b)$$

$$f_{n+1} = \left| \begin{array}{c} \widetilde{2N} \\ (\widetilde{2N})_k \end{array} \right|, \quad f_{n-1} = \left| \begin{array}{cc} -1 & \widetilde{2N-2} \\ (-1)_k & (\widetilde{2N-2})_k \end{array} \right|. \quad (3.2.19c)$$

考虑行列式的和

$$\sum_{j=0}^{2N-1} \left| \begin{array}{cccccccc} \psi & \psi^{(1)} & \dots & \psi^{(j-1)} & \tilde{\psi}^{(j)} & \psi^{(j+1)} & \dots & \psi^{(2N-1)} \\ \psi_k & \psi_k^{(1)} & \dots & \psi_k^{(j-1)} & \tilde{\psi}_k^{(j)} & \psi_k^{(j+1)} & \dots & \psi_k^{(2N-1)} \end{array} \right|, \quad (3.2.20a)$$

其中 $(\tilde{\psi}^{(j)}, \tilde{\psi}_k^{(j)})^T = (2 \cosh k_1 \psi_1^{(j)}, \dots, 2 \cosh k_N \psi_N^{(j)}, 2 \sinh k_1 \psi_1^{(j)} + 2 \cosh k_1 \psi_{1,k_1}^{(j)}, \dots, 2 \sinh k_N \psi_N^{(j)} + 2 \cosh k_N \psi_{N,k_N}^{(j)})^T$, 把 (3.2.20a) 中地行列式先按列展开, 化简后一些项再按行展成行列式, 容易算得其值为

$$\sum_{j=1}^N 4(\cosh k_j) \left| \begin{array}{c} \widetilde{2N-1} \\ (\widetilde{2N-1})_k \end{array} \right|, \quad (3.2.20b)$$

另一方面由关系式 (3.1.12,14) 与 (3.2.17), 和式 (3.2.20a) 又等于

$$\left| \begin{array}{cc} \widetilde{2N-2} & 2N \\ (\widetilde{2N-2})_k & (2N)_k \end{array} \right| + \left| \begin{array}{cc} -1 & \widetilde{2N-1} \\ (-1)_k & (\widetilde{2N-1})_k \end{array} \right|, \quad (3.2.20c)$$

即存在等式

$$\left(\sum_{j=1}^N 4 \cosh k_j \right) \left| \begin{array}{c} \widetilde{2N-1} \\ (\widetilde{2N-1})_k \end{array} \right| = \left| \begin{array}{cc} \widetilde{2N-2} & 2N \\ (\widetilde{2N-2})_k & (2N)_k \end{array} \right| + \left| \begin{array}{cc} -1 & \widetilde{2N-1} \\ (-1)_k & (\widetilde{2N-1})_k \end{array} \right|, \quad (3.2.21a)$$

类似地

$$\begin{aligned} & \left(\sum_{j=1}^N 4 \cosh k_j \right) \left| \begin{array}{cc} \widetilde{2N-2} & 2N \\ (\widetilde{2N-2})_k & (2N)_k \end{array} \right| = \left| \begin{array}{ccc} \widetilde{2N-3} & 2N-1 & 2N \\ (\widetilde{2N-3})_k & (2N-1)_k & (2N)_k \end{array} \right| \\ & + \left| \begin{array}{cc} \widetilde{2N-2} & 2N+1 \\ (\widetilde{2N-2})_k & (2N+1)_k \end{array} \right| + \left| \begin{array}{c} \widetilde{2N-1} \\ (\widetilde{2N-1})_k \end{array} \right| + \left| \begin{array}{ccc} -1 & \widetilde{2N-2} & 2N \\ (-1)_k & (\widetilde{2N-2})_k & (2N)_k \end{array} \right|. \end{aligned} \quad (3.2.21b)$$

把 (3.2.19) 代入 Toda 链的双线性形式, 并利用 (3.2.21),

$$\begin{aligned} & f_{n,tt}f_n - f_{n,t}^2 - f_{n-1}f_{n+1} + f_n^2 = \left| \begin{array}{cc} -1 & \widetilde{N-1} \\ (-1)_k & (\widetilde{N-1})_k \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{cc} \widetilde{2N-2} & 2N \\ (\widetilde{2N-2})_k & (2N)_k \end{array} \right| \\ & - \left| \begin{array}{c} \widetilde{2N} \\ (\widetilde{2N})_k \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{cc} -1 & \widetilde{2N-2} \\ (-1)_k & (\widetilde{2N-2})_k \end{array} \right| - \left| \begin{array}{c} \widetilde{2N-1} \\ (\widetilde{2N-1})_k \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{ccc} -1 & \widetilde{2N-2} & 2N \\ (-1)_k & (\widetilde{2N-2})_k & (2N)_k \end{array} \right| = 0, \end{aligned} \quad (3.2.22)$$

这就验证了 Wrosnkian 行列式 (3.2.18) 满足 Toda 链方程.

对于 (3.2.18) 当 $N = 1$ 时, 若取 ψ_1 的表达式为 (3.2.16) 且 $a_1^\pm = 1$, 则 f 的具体表达式为

$$f_n = \begin{vmatrix} \psi_1 & \psi_{1,t} \\ \psi_{1,k_1} & \psi_{1,t,k_1} \end{vmatrix} \\ = e^{-k_1 - 2k_1 n + 2e^{-k_1} t} [1 - e^{2k_1 + 2(2k_1 n + 2t \sinh k_1)} - 4 \sinh k_1 (t \cosh k_1 + n + \frac{1}{2}) e^{k_1 + 2k_1 n + 2t \sinh k_1}], \quad (3.2.23)$$

令

$$-4 \sinh k_1 e^{k_1} e^{2k_1 n + 2t \sinh k_1} = e^{\xi_1}, \quad n + t \cosh k_1 + \frac{1}{2} = \eta_1. \quad (3.2.24)$$

则 (3.2.23) 可简写为

$$f_n = 1 + \eta_1 e^{\xi_1} - \frac{1}{16 \sinh^2 k_1} e^{2\xi_1}, \quad (3.2.25)$$

其恰与 Hirota 方法得到新单孤子解 f 的表达式是一致的. 类似地可以算出当 $N = 2$ 时, 由 Wronskian 行列式得到的双孤子解与 Hirota 方法得到的结果是一致的.

本章中我们验证了 KP 和 Toda 链方程具有 Wronskian 形式的新解, 并且发现由 Wronskian 技巧得到的单双孤子解与第二章利用 Hirota 方法得到的新解是一致的. 同理 KdV, mKdV 和 sine-Gordon 等孤子方程也存在类似的 Wronskian 形式的新解, 及其与 Hirota 方法得到的解之间的关系. 引入对参数求导, 可得到更广泛的 Wronskian 形式的解.

第四章 具自容源的 KP 方程及其求解

本章我们由线性问题的相容性条件推导出具自容源的 KP 方程, 并利用 Hirota 方法和 Wronskian 技巧分别得到此方程的解及其新解.

4.1 具自容源的 KP 方程

这一节从 KP 方程的谱问题和时间发展式的相容性条件出发导出具自容源的 KP 方程.

考虑 KP 方程的谱问题和共轭谱问题

$$\Phi_y = \Phi_{xx} + u\Phi, \quad -\Psi_y = \Psi_{xx} + u\Psi, \quad (4.1.1a, b)$$

假设其时间发展式为

$$\Phi_t = A\Phi, \quad (4.1.2)$$

其中 A 是关于 ∂, ∂^{-1} ($\partial = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, \partial^{-1}\partial = \partial\partial^{-1} = 1$) 的算子多项式. 由 (4.1.1a) 和 (4.1.2) 的相容性条件 $\Phi_{yt} = \Phi_{ty}$, 发现 A 满足方程

$$u_t - A_y + [\partial^2 + u, A] = 0, \quad (4.1.3a)$$

或

$$u_t = A_y - 2A_x\partial - A_{xx} - [u, A]. \quad (4.1.3b)$$

如果取

$$A = (L^3)_+ = \partial^3 + 3u\partial + \frac{3}{2}(u_x + \partial^{-1}u_y), \quad (4.1.4)$$

其中下标 $+$ 表示拟微分算子

$$L = \partial + u\partial^{-1} + u_2\partial^{-2} + u_3\partial^{-3} + \dots, \quad (4.1.5)$$

三次方的微分算子项的和, 把 (4.1.4) 代入 (4.1.3b) 就可以得到 KP 方程 (3.2.1).

如果算子 A 只含有 ∂ 的负次幂项, 即设

$$A = \bar{a}_1\partial^{-1} + \bar{a}_2\partial^{-2} + \dots + \bar{a}_n\partial^{-n} + \dots = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \bar{a}_j\partial^{-j}, \quad (4.1.6)$$

其中系数 \bar{a}_j 是 t, x, y 的可微函数. 容易算得

$$A_y = \bar{a}_{1,y}\partial^{-1} + \bar{a}_{2,y}\partial^{-2} + \dots + \bar{a}_{n,y}\partial^{-n} + \dots, \quad (4.1.7a)$$

$$A_x \partial = \tilde{a}_{1,x} + \tilde{a}_{2,x} \partial^{-1} + \cdots + \tilde{a}_{n,x} \partial^{-n+1} + \cdots, \quad (4.1.7b)$$

$$A_{xx} = \tilde{a}_{1,xx} \partial^{-1} + \tilde{a}_{2,xx} \partial^{-2} + \cdots + \tilde{a}_{n,xx} \partial^{-n} + \cdots, \quad (4.1.7c)$$

$$[u, A] = - \sum_{k=2}^{\infty} \sum_{j=1}^{k-1} \tilde{a}_j (-1)^{k-j} C_{k-1}^{k-j} u^{(k-j)} \partial^{-k}, \quad (4.1.7d)$$

把上式代入 (4.1.3b), 则有

$$u_t = \tilde{a}_{1,x}, \quad (4.1.8a)$$

$$\tilde{a}_{1,y} - 2\tilde{a}_{2,x} - \tilde{a}_{1,xx} = 0, \quad (4.1.8b)$$

$$\tilde{a}_{2,y} - 2\tilde{a}_{3,x} - \tilde{a}_{2,xx} - \tilde{a}_1 u_x = 0, \quad (4.1.8c)$$

$$\tilde{a}_{3,y} - 2\tilde{a}_{4,x} - \tilde{a}_{3,xx} + \tilde{a}_1 u_{xx} - 2\tilde{a}_2 u_x = 0, \quad (4.1.8d)$$

...

取 $\tilde{a}_1 = \frac{1}{4} \Phi \Psi$, 由 (4.1.8), (4.1.1) 可解得

$$\tilde{a}_2 = -\frac{1}{4} \Phi \Psi_x, \quad \tilde{a}_3 = \frac{1}{4} \Phi \Psi_{xx}, \quad \dots, \quad (4.1.9)$$

因此算子 A 可写成

$$A = \frac{1}{4} \Phi (\Psi \partial^{-1} - \Psi_x \partial^{-2} + \Psi_{xx} \partial^{-3} + \cdots) = \frac{1}{4} \Phi \partial^{-1} \Psi. \quad (4.1.10)$$

现在进而设

$$A = a_0 \partial^3 + a_1 \partial^2 + a_2 \partial + a_3 + \alpha \Phi \partial^{-1} \Psi, \quad (4.1.11)$$

其中 a_j ($j = 0, 1, 2, 3$) 是关于 u 及其导数的待定函数, α 是任意的常数. 由此可得

$$A_y = a_{0,y} \partial^3 + a_{1,y} \partial^2 + a_{2,y} \partial + a_{3,y} + \alpha \Phi_y \partial^{-1} \Psi + \alpha \Phi \partial^{-1} \Psi_y, \quad (4.1.12a)$$

$$A_x \partial = a_{0,x} \partial^4 + a_{1,x} \partial^3 + a_{2,x} \partial^2 + a_{3,x} \partial + \alpha \Phi_x \partial^{-1} \Psi \partial + \alpha \Phi \partial^{-1} \Psi_x \partial, \quad (4.1.12b)$$

$$A_{xx} = a_{0,xx} \partial^3 + a_{1,xx} \partial^2 + a_{2,xx} \partial + a_{3,xx} + \alpha \Phi_{xx} \partial^{-1} \Psi + 2\alpha \Phi_x \partial^{-1} \Psi_x + \alpha \Phi \partial^{-1} \Psi_{xx}, \quad (4.1.12c)$$

$$[u, A] = u \alpha \Phi \partial^{-1} \Psi - a_0 u_{xxx} - 3a_0 u_{xx} \partial - 3a_0 u_x \partial^2 - a_1 u_{xx} - 2a_1 u_x \partial - a_2 u_x - \alpha \Phi \partial^{-1} \Psi u, \quad (4.1.12d)$$

把 (4.1.12) 代入 (4.1.3b), 利用 (4.1.1), 其中关于 Φ, Ψ 的项可化简为

$$\begin{aligned} & -\alpha \Phi \partial^{-1} \Psi_{xx} + \alpha \Phi \partial^{-1} \Psi u - \alpha u \Phi \partial^{-1} \Psi \\ & = \alpha (\Phi_y - \Phi_{xx} - u \Phi) \partial^{-1} \Psi + \alpha \Phi \partial^{-1} (\Psi_y + \Psi u - \Psi_{xx}) - 2\alpha \Phi_x \partial^{-1} \Psi \partial - 2\alpha \Phi \partial^{-1} \Psi_x \partial - 2\alpha \Phi_x \partial^{-1} \Psi_x \\ & = -2\alpha (\Phi \Psi)_x, \end{aligned} \quad (4.1.13)$$

而其余项在比较 ∂ 的同次幂系数给出

$$u_t = a_{3,y} - a_{3,xx} + a_0 u_{xxx} + a_1 u_{xx} + a_2 u_x - 2\alpha(\Phi\Psi)_x, \quad (4.1.14a)$$

$$a_{2,y} - 2a_{3,x} - a_{2,xx} + 3a_0 u_{xx} + 2a_1 u_x = 0, \quad (4.1.14b)$$

$$a_{1,y} - 2a_{2,x} - a_{1,xx} + 3a_0 u_x = 0, \quad (4.1.14c)$$

$$a_{0,y} - 2a_{1,x} - a_{0,xx} = 0, \quad (4.1.14d)$$

$$a_{0,x} = 0. \quad (4.1.14e)$$

由 (4.1.14e) 取 $a_0 = -4$, 再由 (4.1.14d-b) 依次得

$$a_1 = 0, \quad a_2 = -6u, \quad a_3 = -3u_x - 3\partial^{-1}u_y. \quad (4.1.15)$$

从而 (4.1.14a) 这时成为

$$u_t + u_{xxx} + 6uu_x + 3\partial^{-1}u_{yy} + \frac{1}{2}(\Phi\Psi)_x = 0, \quad (4.1.16)$$

且

$$A = -4\partial^3 - 6u\partial - 3u_x - 3(\partial^{-1}u_y) + \frac{1}{4}\Phi\partial^{-1}\Psi, \quad (4.1.17)$$

其中 $\alpha = \frac{1}{4}$. 通常 (4.1.16) 与 (4.1.1) 称为具一个自容源的 KP 方程. 一般地, 若取

$$A = -4\partial^3 - 6u\partial - 3u_x - 3(\partial^{-1}u_y) + \frac{1}{4}\sum_{j=1}^N \Phi_j \partial^{-1} \Psi_j. \quad (4.1.18)$$

$$\Phi_{j,y} = \Phi_{j,xx} + u\Phi_j, \quad (4.1.19a)$$

$$-\Psi_{j,y} = \Psi_{j,xx} + u\Psi_j, \quad (4.1.19b)$$

把 (4.1.18) 代入 (4.1.3b), 类似的分析可以得到方程

$$u_t + u_{xxx} + 6uu_x + 3\partial^{-1}u_{yy} + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{j=1}^N (\Phi_j \Psi_j)_x = 0, \quad (4.1.20)$$

则 (4.1.20) 和 (4.1.19) 称为具有 N 个自容源的 KP 方程.

4.2 Hirota 形式的解

本节中我们利用 Hirota 方法求具自容源 KP 方程的多孤子解. 在 (4.1.19.20) 中, 作变换

$$u = 2(\ln f)_{xx}, \quad \Phi_j = \frac{g_j}{f}, \quad \Psi_j = \frac{h_j}{f}, \quad (4.2.1a, b, c)$$

则 f, g_j 与 h_j 满足双线性导数方程

$$(D_x D_t + D_x^4 + 3D_y^2) f \cdot f = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^N g_j \cdot h_j, \quad (4.2.2a)$$

$$D_y g_j \cdot f = D_x^2 g_j \cdot f, \quad (4.2.2b)$$

$$-D_y h_j \cdot f = D_x^2 h_j \cdot f, \quad (4.2.2c)$$

其中 D 是双线性算子. 设 f 按 ϵ 的偶次幂展开, g_j 和 h_j 按奇次幂展开

$$f = 1 + f^{(2)} \epsilon^2 + f^{(4)} \epsilon^4 + \dots, \quad (4.2.3a)$$

$$g_j = g_j^{(1)} \epsilon + g_j^{(3)} \epsilon^3 + \dots, \quad (4.2.3b)$$

$$h_j = h_j^{(1)} \epsilon + h_j^{(3)} \epsilon^3 + \dots, \quad (4.2.3c)$$

把这些展开式代入 (4.2.2) 并比较 ϵ 的同次幂系数得

$$f_{xt}^{(2)} + f_{xxxx}^{(2)} + 3f_{yy}^{(2)} = -\frac{1}{4} \sum_{j=1}^N g_j^{(1)} h_j^{(1)}, \quad (4.2.4a)$$

$$f_{xt}^{(4)} + f_{xxxx}^{(4)} + 3f_{yy}^{(4)} = -\frac{1}{2} (D_x D_t + D_x^4 + 3D_y^2) f^{(2)} \cdot f^{(2)} - \frac{1}{4} \sum_{j=1}^N (g_j^{(1)} h_j^{(3)} + g_j^{(3)} h_j^{(1)}), \quad (4.2.4b)$$

$$f_{xt}^{(6)} + f_{xxxx}^{(6)} + 3f_{yy}^{(6)} = -(D_x D_t + D_x^4 + 3D_y^2) f^{(2)} \cdot f^{(4)} - \frac{1}{4} \sum_{j=1}^N (g_j^{(1)} h_j^{(5)} + g_j^{(3)} h_j^{(3)} + g_j^{(5)} h_j^{(1)}), \quad (4.2.4c)$$

.....,

$$g_{j,y}^{(1)} = g_{j,xx}^{(1)}, \quad (4.2.5a)$$

$$g_{j,y}^{(3)} = g_{j,xx}^{(3)} - D_y g_j^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} + D_x^2 g_j^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)}, \quad (4.2.5b)$$

$$g_{j,y}^{(5)} = g_{j,xx}^{(5)} - D_y (g_j^{(1)} \cdot f^{(4)} + g_j^{(3)} \cdot f^{(2)}) + D_x^2 (g_j^{(1)} \cdot f^{(4)} + g_j^{(3)} \cdot f^{(2)}), \quad (4.2.5c)$$

.....,

$$-h_{j,y}^{(1)} = h_{j,xx}^{(1)}, \quad (4.2.6a)$$

$$-h_{j,y}^{(3)} = h_{j,xx}^{(3)} + D_y h_j^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} + D_x^2 h_j^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)}, \quad (4.2.6b)$$

$$-h_{j,y}^{(5)} = h_{j,xx}^{(5)} + D_y (h_j^{(1)} \cdot f^{(4)} + h_j^{(3)} \cdot f^{(2)}) + D_x^2 (h_j^{(1)} \cdot f^{(4)} + h_j^{(3)} \cdot f^{(2)}), \quad (4.2.6c)$$

.....,

如果取 $g_j^{(1)}, h_j^{(1)}$ 具有以下形式的解

$$g_j^{(1)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_j + q_j)\beta_j(t)} e^{\xi_j}, \quad \xi_j = k_j x + k_j^2 y - 4k_j^3 t - \int_0^t \beta_j(z) dz + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad (4.2.7a, b)$$

$$h_j^{(1)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_j + q_j)\beta_j(t)}e^{\eta_j}, \quad \eta_j = q_j x - q_j^2 y - 4q_j^3 t - \int_0^t \beta_j(z) dz + \eta_j^{(0)}, \quad (4.2.8a, b)$$

则从 (4.2.4-6) 可导出具自容源 KP 方程的 N 孤子解.

当 $N = 1$ 时, 取

$$g_1^{(1)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)}e^{\xi_1}, \quad h_1^{(1)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)}e^{\eta_1}. \quad (4.2.9)$$

从 (4.2.4 - 4.2.6), 依次算得

$$f^{(2)} = e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1}, \quad (4.2.10a)$$

$$g_1^{(l)} = 0, \quad h_1^{(l)} = 0, \quad l = 3, 5, \dots, \quad (4.2.10b)$$

$$f^{(m)} = 0, \quad m = 4, 6, \dots. \quad (4.2.10c)$$

所以单孤子解为

$$u = 2[\ln(1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1})]_{xx}, \quad (4.2.11a)$$

$$\Phi_1 = \frac{e^{\xi_1}}{1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1}}, \quad \Psi_1 = \frac{e^{\eta_1}}{1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1}}. \quad (4.2.11b)$$

如果仍取 $g_1^{(1)}, h_1^{(1)}$ 为 (4.2.9), 而

$$f^{(2)} = e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2}, \quad \tilde{\xi}_2 = k_2 x + k_2^2 y - 4k_2^3 t + \tilde{\xi}_2^{(0)}, \quad \tilde{\eta}_2 = q_2 x - q_2^2 y - 4q_2^3 t + \tilde{\eta}_2^{(0)}, \quad (4.2.12a)$$

则可定出

$$g_1^{(3)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} \frac{(k_2 - k_1)}{(k_1 + q_2)} e^{\xi_1 + \tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2 + i\pi},$$

$$h_1^{(3)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} \frac{(q_2 - q_1)}{(q_1 + k_2)} e^{\eta_1 + \tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2 + i\pi}, \quad (4.2.12b, c)$$

$$f^{(4)} = e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2 + A_{12}}, \quad g_j^{(l)} = 0, \quad h_j^{(l)} = 0, \quad j = 1, 2, \quad l = 5, 7, \dots, \quad (4.2.12d, e)$$

$$f^{(m)} = 0, \quad m = 6, 8, \dots, \quad e^{A_{12}} = \frac{(k_1 - k_2)(q_1 - q_2)}{(k_1 + q_2)(k_2 + q_1)}, \quad (4.2.12f, g)$$

所以此时的双孤子解为

$$u = 2[\ln(1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2} + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2 + A_{12}})]_{xx}, \quad (4.2.13a)$$

$$\Phi_1 = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} \frac{e^{\xi_1} [1 + \frac{(k_2 - k_1)}{(k_1 + q_2)} e^{\tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2 + i\pi}]}{1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2} + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2 + A_{12}}}, \quad (4.2.13b)$$

$$\Psi_1 = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} \frac{e^{\eta_1} [1 + \frac{(q_2 - q_1)}{(q_1 + k_2)} e^{\tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2 + i\pi}]}{1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2} + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2 + A_{12}}}, \quad (4.2.13c)$$

如此继续下去即得具自容源 KP 方程当 $N = 1$ 时的多孤子解.

当 $N = 2$ 时, 如果取

$$g_j^{(1)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_j + q_j)\beta_j(t)}e^{\xi_j}, \quad h_j^{(1)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_j + q_j)\beta_j(t)}e^{\eta_j}, \quad j = 1, 2, \quad (4.2.14a)$$

其中 ξ_j, η_j 的定义为 (4.2.7b), (4.2.8b). 由 (4.2.4 – 4.2.6) 可以算出

$$f^{(2)} = e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2}, \quad (4.2.14b)$$

$$g_1^{(3)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} \frac{(k_2 - k_1)}{(k_1 + q_2)} e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2 + \eta_2 + i\pi},$$

$$g_2^{(3)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_2 + q_2)\beta_2(t)} \frac{(k_2 - k_1)}{(k_2 + q_1)} e^{\xi_2 + \xi_1 + \eta_1}, \quad (4.2.14c)$$

$$h_1^{(3)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} \frac{(q_2 - q_1)}{(q_1 + k_2)} e^{\eta_1 + \xi_2 + \eta_2 + i\pi},$$

$$h_2^{(3)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_2 + q_2)\beta_2(t)} \frac{(q_2 - q_1)}{(q_2 + k_1)} e^{\eta_2 + \xi_1 + \eta_1}, \quad (4.2.14d)$$

$$f^{(4)} = e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \xi_2 + \eta_2 + A_{12}}, \quad (4.2.14e)$$

$$g_j^{(l)} = 0, \quad h_j^{(l)} = 0, \quad j = 1, 2, \quad l = 3, 5, \dots, \quad f^{(m)} = 0, \quad m = 6, 8, \dots, \quad (4.2.14f)$$

所以双孤子解为

$$u = 2[\ln(1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2} + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \xi_2 + \eta_2 + A_{12}})]_{xx}, \quad (4.2.15a)$$

$$\Phi_1 = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} \frac{e^{\xi_1} [1 + \frac{(k_2 - k_1)}{(k_1 + q_2)} e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2 + i\pi}]}{1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2} + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \xi_2 + \eta_2 + A_{12}}}, \quad (4.2.15b)$$

$$\Phi_2 = 2\sqrt{2(k_2 + q_2)\beta_2(t)} \frac{e^{\xi_2} [1 + \frac{(k_2 - k_1)}{(k_2 + q_1)} e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1}]}{1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2} + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \xi_2 + \eta_2 + A_{12}}}, \quad (4.2.15c)$$

$$\Psi_1 = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} \frac{e^{\eta_1} [1 + \frac{(q_2 - q_1)}{(q_1 + k_2)} e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2 + i\pi}]}{1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2} + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \xi_2 + \eta_2 + A_{12}}}, \quad (4.2.15d)$$

$$\Psi_2 = 2\sqrt{2(k_2 + q_2)\beta_2(t)} \frac{e^{\eta_2} [1 + \frac{(q_2 - q_1)}{(q_2 + k_1)} e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1}]}{1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2} + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \xi_2 + \eta_2 + A_{12}}}. \quad (4.2.15e)$$

令 (4.2.15) 中的 $\beta_2 = 0$ 则结果恰是 $N = 1$ 时的双孤子解. 类似的计算过程, 可得 $N = 2$ 时的多孤子解.

如果取

$$g_j^{(1)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_j + q_j)\beta_j(t)} e^{\xi_j}, \quad h_j^{(1)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_j + q_j)\beta_j(t)} e^{\eta_j}, \quad j = 1, 2, 3. \quad (4.2.16a)$$

则可算得三孤子解, 其中 f, g_j, h_j 的表达式为

$$f = 1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2} + e^{\xi_3 + \eta_3} + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \xi_2 + \eta_2 + A_{12}} + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \xi_3 + \eta_3 + A_{13}}$$

$$+ e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2 + \xi_3 + \eta_3 + A_{23}} + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \xi_2 + \eta_2 + \xi_3 + \eta_3 + A_{12} + A_{13} + A_{23}}, \quad (4.2.16b)$$

$$e^{A_{jl}} = \frac{(k_j - k_l)(q_j - q_l)}{(k_j + q_l)(k_l + q_j)}, \quad (j < l, j, l = 1, 2, 3). \quad (4.2.16c)$$

$$g_1 = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} e^{\xi_1} \left[e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2 + i\pi} \frac{(k_2 - k_1)}{(k_1 + q_2)} + e^{\xi_3 + \eta_3 + i\pi} \frac{(k_3 - k_1)}{(k_1 + q_3)} \right]$$

$$+ e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2 + \xi_3 + \eta_3 + A_{23}} \frac{(k_2 - k_1)(k_3 - k_1)}{(k_1 + q_2)(k_1 + q_3)} \Big], \quad (4.2.17a)$$

$$g_2 = 2\sqrt{2(k_2 + q_2)\beta_2(t)}e^{\xi_2} \left[e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} \frac{(k_2 - k_1)}{(k_2 + q_1)} + e^{\xi_3 + \eta_3 + i\pi} \frac{(k_3 - k_2)}{(k_2 + q_3)} \right. \\ \left. + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \xi_3 + \eta_3 + i\pi + A_{13}} \frac{(k_2 - k_1)(k_3 - k_2)}{(k_2 + q_1)(k_2 + q_3)} \right], \quad (4.2.17b)$$

$$g_3 = 2\sqrt{2(k_3 + q_3)\beta_3(t)}e^{\xi_3} \left[e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} \frac{(k_3 - k_1)}{(k_3 + q_1)} + e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2} \frac{(k_3 - k_2)}{(k_3 + q_2)} \right. \\ \left. + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \xi_2 + \eta_2 + A_{12}} \frac{(k_3 - k_1)(k_3 - k_2)}{(k_3 + q_1)(k_3 + q_2)} \right], \quad (4.2.17c)$$

$$h_1 = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)}e^{\eta_1} \left[e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2 + i\pi} \frac{(q_2 - q_1)}{(q_1 + k_2)} + e^{\xi_3 + \eta_3 + i\pi} \frac{(q_3 - q_1)}{(q_1 + k_3)} \right. \\ \left. + e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2 + \xi_3 + \eta_3 + A_{23}} \frac{(q_2 - q_1)(q_3 - q_1)}{(q_1 + k_2)(q_1 + k_3)} \right], \quad (4.2.18a)$$

$$h_2 = 2\sqrt{2(k_2 + q_2)\beta_2(t)}e^{\eta_2} \left[e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} \frac{(q_2 - q_1)}{(q_2 + k_1)} + e^{\xi_3 + \eta_3 + i\pi} \frac{(q_3 - q_2)}{(q_2 + k_3)} \right. \\ \left. + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \xi_3 + \eta_3 + i\pi + A_{13}} \frac{(q_2 - q_1)(q_3 - q_2)}{(q_2 + k_1)(q_2 + k_3)} \right], \quad (4.2.18b)$$

$$h_3 = 2\sqrt{2(k_3 + q_3)\beta_3(t)}e^{\eta_3} \left[e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} \frac{(q_3 - q_1)}{(q_3 + k_1)} + e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2} \frac{(q_3 - q_2)}{(q_3 + k_2)} \right. \\ \left. + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \xi_2 + \eta_2 + A_{12}} \frac{(q_3 - q_1)(q_3 - q_2)}{(q_3 + k_1)(q_3 + k_2)} \right], \quad (4.2.18c)$$

一般地, N 孤子解有相应的表达式

$$f = \sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j(\xi_j + \eta_j) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl}\right], \quad (4.2.19)$$

$$g_1 = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)}e^{\xi_1} \sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{j>1}^N \mu_j(\xi_j + \eta_j + i\pi + B_{j1}) + \sum_{2 \leq j < l} \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl}\right], \quad (4.2.20a)$$

$$g_m = 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)}e^{\xi_m} \sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{1 \leq j < m} \mu_j(\xi_j + \eta_j + B_{mj})\right. \\ \left. \exp\left[\sum_{j>m}^N \mu_j(\xi_j + \eta_j + i\pi + B_{jm}) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l, j, l \neq m}^N \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl}\right]\right], \quad (4.2.20b)$$

$$g_N = 2\sqrt{2(k_N + q_N)\beta_N(t)}e^{\xi_N} \sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{1 \leq j < N} \mu_j(\xi_j + \eta_j + B_{Nj}) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^{N-1} \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl}\right]. \quad (4.2.20c)$$

$$h_1 = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)}e^{\eta_1} \sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{j>1}^N \mu_j(\xi_j + \eta_j + i\pi + C_{j1}) + \sum_{2 \leq j < l}^N \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl}\right], \quad (4.2.21a)$$

$$h_m = 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)}e^{\eta_m} \sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{1 \leq j < m} \mu_j(\xi_j + \eta_j + C_{mj})\right]$$

$$\exp\left[\sum_{j>m}^N \mu_j(\xi_j + \eta_j + i\pi + C_{jm}) + \sum_{1\leq j<l, j,l\neq m}^N \mu_j\mu_l A_{jl}\right], \quad (4.2.21b)$$

$$h_N = 2\sqrt{2(k_N + q_N)\beta_N(t)}e^{\eta_N} \sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{1\leq j<N} \mu_j(\xi_j + \eta_j + C_{Nj}) + \sum_{1\leq j<l}^{N-1} \mu_j\mu_l A_{jl}\right], \quad (4.2.21c)$$

其中对 μ 的和式仍表示当 μ_j ($j = 1, 2, \dots, n$) 取 0 或 1 时所有可能的项之和, 且

$$\begin{aligned} e^{A_{jl}} &= \frac{(k_j - k_l)(q_j - q_l)}{(k_j + q_l)(k_l + q_j)}, \quad e^{B_{j1}} = \left(\frac{k_j - k_1}{k_1 + q_j}\right), \quad e^{C_{j1}} = \left(\frac{q_j - q_1}{q_1 + k_j}\right), \\ e^{B_{mj}} &= \left(\frac{k_m - k_j}{k_m + q_j}\right), \quad e^{C_{mj}} = \left(\frac{q_m - q_j}{q_m + k_j}\right), \quad e^{B_{Nj}} = \left(\frac{k_N - k_j}{k_N + q_j}\right), \\ e^{C_{Nj}} &= \left(\frac{q_N - q_j}{q_N + k_j}\right), \quad e^{B_{jm}} = \left(\frac{k_j - k_m}{k_m + q_j}\right), \quad e^{C_{jm}} = \left(\frac{q_j - q_m}{q_m + k_j}\right). \end{aligned} \quad (4.2.22)$$

4.3. Wronskian 行列式形式的解

从 Hirota 方法所得到具自容源 KP 方程的多孤子解可表示成 Wronskian 行列式. 我们有以下结果.

$$f = |\phi, \phi^{(1)}, \dots, \phi^{(N-1)}| = |0, 1, \dots, N-1| = |\widehat{N-1}|, \quad (4.3.1)$$

$$g_m = 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)}e^{\xi_m - \eta_m} |\psi, \psi^{(1)}, \dots, \psi^{(N-2)}, \tau_m|, \quad (4.3.2)$$

$$h_m = 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)} |\phi, \phi^{(1)}, \dots, \phi^{(N-2)}, \tau_m|, \quad m = 1, 2, \dots, n, \quad (4.3.3)$$

其中 $\tau_m = (\delta_{m,1}, \delta_{m,2}, \dots, \delta_{m,N})^T$

$$\phi_j = e^{\xi_j} + (-1)^{j-1} e^{-\eta_j}, \quad (4.3.4a)$$

$$\phi_{j,y} = \phi_{j,xx}, \quad \phi_{j,t} = -4\phi_{j,xxx} - \beta_j(t)[e^{\xi_j} - (-1)^{j-1} e^{-\eta_j}], \quad (4.3.4b)$$

$$\psi_j = (k_m - k_j)(k_j + q_m)e^{\xi_j} + (-1)^{j-1}(q_m - q_j)(q_j + k_m)e^{-\eta_j}, \quad (j < m), \quad (4.3.4c)$$

$$\psi_j = (k_j - k_m)(k_j + q_m)e^{\xi_j} + (-1)^{j-1}(q_j - q_m)(q_j + k_m)e^{-\eta_j}, \quad (j > m). \quad (4.3.4d)$$

首先我们指出 Wronskian 行列式 (4.3.1-4) 是双线性方程 (4.2.2a) 的解. 容易算得 f 对 x 的导数为

$$f_x = |\widehat{N-2}, N|, \quad (4.3.5)$$

将行列式 f, f_x 按第 i 行展开, 有

$$f = \sum_{j=1}^N (-1)^{i+j} \partial^{j-1} [e^{\xi_i} + (-1)^{i-1} e^{-\eta_i}] \cdot A_{ij}, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, N, \quad (4.3.6a)$$

$$f_x = \sum_{l=1}^{N-1} (-1)^{i+l} \partial^{l-1} [e^{\xi_i} + (-1)^{i-1} e^{-\eta_i}] \cdot B_{il} + (-1)^{i+N} \partial^N [e^{\xi_i} + (-1)^{i-1} e^{-\eta_i}] \cdot B_{iN}, \quad (4.3.6b)$$

其中 A_{ij} 和 B_{il} 分别是行列式 f 和 f_x 的代数余子式. 显然 $A_{iN} = B_{iN}$. 同样由 (4.3.1) 和 (4.3.5), 得到

$$f_t = \sum_{i=1}^N \sum_{j=1}^N (-1)^{i+j} \partial^{j-1} [(-4k_i^3 - \beta_i(t))e^{\xi_i} + (-1)^{i-1} (4q_i^3 + \beta_i(t))e^{-\eta_i}] \cdot A_{ij}, \quad (4.3.6c)$$

$$\begin{aligned} f_{xt} = & \sum_{i=1}^N \left\{ \sum_{l=1}^{N-1} (-1)^{i+l} \partial^{l-1} [(-4k_i^3 - \beta_i(t))e^{\xi_i} + (-1)^{i-1} (4q_i^3 + \beta_i(t))e^{-\eta_i}] \cdot B_{il} \right. \\ & \left. + (-1)^{i+N} \partial^N [(-4k_i^3 - \beta_i(t))e^{\xi_i} + (-1)^{i-1} (4q_i^3 + \beta_i(t))e^{-\eta_i}] \cdot B_{iN} \right\}, \quad (4.3.6d) \end{aligned}$$

从 (4.3.1) 和 (4.3.4b) 可见当 $\beta_j(t) = 0$ ($j = 1, 2, \dots, N$) 时其恰是 KP 方程 (3.2.1) 的解, 因此只需证明 $\beta_j(t)$ 在方程 (4.2.2a) 两端的系数相等即可. 不妨考虑含有 $\beta_1(t)$ 的情形. 容易推得

$$\begin{aligned} & [\partial^h (e^{\xi_1} + e^{-\eta_1})][\partial^s (e^{\xi_1} - e^{-\eta_1})] - [\partial^h (e^{\xi_1} - e^{-\eta_1})][\partial^s (e^{\xi_1} + e^{-\eta_1})] \\ &= [k_1^h e^{\xi_1} + (-q_1)^h e^{-\eta_1}][k_1^s e^{\xi_1} - (-q_1)^s e^{-\eta_1}] - [k_1^h e^{\xi_1} - (-q_1)^h e^{-\eta_1}][k_1^s e^{\xi_1} + (-q_1)^s e^{-\eta_1}] \\ &= 2e^{\xi_1 - \eta_1} [k_1^s (-q_1)^h - k_1^h (-q_1)^s]. \quad (4.3.7) \end{aligned}$$

由于在方程 (4.2.2a) 的左端只有第一项 $D_{xt}f \cdot f = 2(f_{xt}f - f_t f_x)$ 中含有 $\beta_1(t)$, 所以有

$$\begin{aligned} 2(f_{xt}f - f_x f_t)|_{\beta_1(t)} = & -2\beta_1(t) \left\{ \sum_{j=1}^N \sum_{l=1}^{N-1} (-1)^{j+l} [\partial^{j-1} (e^{\xi_1} + e^{-\eta_1})][\partial^{l-1} (e^{\xi_1} - e^{-\eta_1})] A_{1j} B_{1l} \right. \\ & + \sum_{j=1}^N (-1)^{j+N} [\partial^{j-1} (e^{\xi_1} + e^{-\eta_1})][\partial^N (e^{\xi_1} - e^{-\eta_1})] A_{1j} B_{1N} \\ & - \sum_{j=1}^N \sum_{l=1}^{N-1} (-1)^{j+l} [\partial^{l-1} (e^{\xi_1} + e^{-\eta_1})][\partial^{j-1} (e^{\xi_1} - e^{-\eta_1})] A_{1j} B_{1l} \\ & \left. - \sum_{j=1}^N (-1)^{j+N} [\partial^{j-1} (e^{\xi_1} - e^{-\eta_1})][\partial^N (e^{\xi_1} + e^{-\eta_1})] A_{1j} B_{1N} \right\}. \quad (4.3.8) \end{aligned}$$

利用公式 (4.3.7), 此式变为

$$\begin{aligned} 2(f_{xt}f - f_x f_t)|_{\beta_1(t)} = & -4\beta_1(t) e^{\xi_1 - \eta_1} \left\{ \sum_{j=1}^{N-1} \sum_{l=1}^{N-1} [(-k_1)^{l-1} q_1^{j-1} - (-k_1)^{j-1} q_1^{l-1}] A_{1j} B_{1l} \right. \\ & \left. - \sum_{j=1}^{N-1} [(-k_1)^N q_1^{j-1} - (-k_1)^{j-1} q_1^N] A_{1j} B_{1N} \right\} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& + \sum_{l=1}^{N-1} [(-k_1)^{l-1} q_1^{N-1} - (-k_1)^{N-1} q_1^{l-1}] A_{1N} B_{1l} \\
& - [(-k_1)^N q_1^{N-1} - (-k_1)^{N-1} q_1^N] A_{1N} B_{1N}. \tag{4.3.9}
\end{aligned}$$

现在定义矩阵 $M(j, l)$ 为

$$M(j, l) = [0, 1, \dots, j-1, j+1, j+2, \dots, l-1, l+1, \dots, N-2]_{(N-1) \times (N-3)}, \tag{4.3.10a}$$

$$M(j-1) = [0, 1, \dots, j-2, j, j+1, \dots, N-2]_{(N-1) \times (N-2)}. \tag{4.3.10b}$$

由 Wronskian 行列式的恒等式 (3.1.6) 推知

$$A_{1,j} = |M(j-1), N-1|, \quad j = 1, 2, \dots, N-1, \tag{4.3.11a}$$

$$B_{1,j} = |M(j-1), N|, \quad j = 1, 2, \dots, N-1, \tag{4.3.11b}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& A_{1,j+1} B_{1,l+1} - A_{1,l+1} B_{1,j+1} = |M(j), N-1| |M(l), N| - |M(l), N-1| |M(j), N| \\
& = |M(j, l), l, N-1| |M(j, l), j, N| - |M(j, l), j, N-1| |M(j, l), l, N| \\
& = -|M(j, l), j, l| |M(j, l), N-1, N| = -|M(j, l), N-1, N| A_{1N}, \quad (0 \leq j < l \leq N-2), \tag{4.3.12}
\end{aligned}$$

利用 (4.3.10), (4.3.9) 式的右端可表示为

$$\begin{aligned}
& -4\beta_1(t) e^{\xi_1 - \eta_1} \left\{ \sum_{j=1}^{N-2} \sum_{l=j+1}^{N-1} (-k_1 q_1)^{j-1} [q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}] |M(j-1, l-1), N-1, N| A_{1N} \right. \\
& + \sum_{j=1}^{N-1} (-k_1 q_1)^{j-1} [q_1^{N-j+1} - (-k_1)^{N-j+1}] |M(j-1), N-1| A_{1N} \\
& + \sum_{l=1}^{N-1} (-k_1 q_1)^{l-1} [q_1^{N-l} - (-k_1)^{N-l}] |M(j-1), N| A_{1N} \\
& \left. + (-k_1 q_1)^{N-1} (k_1 + q_1) A_{1N}^2 \right\}. \tag{4.3.13}
\end{aligned}$$

其次计算 h_1 和 g_1 的 Wronskian 行列式的值. 由 (4.3.3) 得

$$h_1 = (-1)^{1+N} 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} A_{1N}. \tag{4.3.14}$$

而将 g_1 写为

$$g_1 = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} e^{\xi_1 - \eta_1} \tilde{g}_1, \tag{4.3.15a}$$

其中 \tilde{g}_1 是 $N \times N$ 行列式

$$\tilde{g}_1 = |L(\widehat{N-2}), \tau_1| = |L \cdot 0, L \cdot 1, L \cdot 2, \dots, L \cdot (N-2), \tau_1|$$

$$= |b \cdot 0 + a \cdot 1 + 2, b \cdot 1 + a \cdot 2 + 3, b \cdot 2 + a \cdot 3 + 4, \dots, b \cdot (N-2) + a \cdot (N-1) + N, \tau_1|, \quad (4.3.15b)$$

$$L = b + a\partial + \partial^2, \quad b = -k_1 q_1, \quad a = q_1 - k_1. \quad (4.3.15c)$$

根据行列式的性质, \tilde{g}_1 可表示成形如

$$|F(j, l), \tau_1| = |0, 1, \dots, j-1, j+1, \dots, l-1, l+1, l+2, \dots, N, \tau_1| \quad (4.3.16)$$

行列式的线性组合. 经过分析 $|F(j, l), \tau_1|$ 的系数, 有

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{g}_1 &= \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} \sum_{l=j+1}^N |F(j, l), \tau_1| (-k_1 q_1)^j \\ &\quad [(q_1 - k_1)^{l-j-1} - C_{l-j-2}^1 (q_1 - k_1)^{l-j-3} (-k_1 q_1) + C_{l-j-3}^2 (q_1 - k_1)^{l-j-5} (-k_1 q_1)^2 \\ &\quad - C_{l-j-4}^3 (q_1 - k_1)^{l-j-7} (-k_1 q_1)^3 + \dots \\ &\quad + \begin{cases} (-1)^{\frac{l-j-1}{2}} (-k_1 q_1)^{\frac{l-j-1}{2}} & \text{if } l-j \text{ is odd} \\ (-1)^{\frac{l-j-2}{2}} C_{\frac{l-j}{2}}^{\frac{l-j-2}{2}} (-k_1 q_1)^{\frac{l-j-2}{2}} (q_1 - k_1) & \text{if } l-j \text{ is even} \end{cases}, \end{aligned} \quad (4.3.17)$$

上式中 $|F(j, l), \tau_1|$ 后的代数数和为

$$(-k_1 q_1)^j \frac{q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}}{q_1 + k_1}. \quad (4.3.18)$$

这是因为在 (4.3.18) 中 $(-k_1 q_1)^j q_1^{l-j-m-1} (-k_1)^m$ 的系数为

$$\begin{aligned} &C_{l-j-1}^m - C_{l-j-2}^1 C_{l-j-3}^{m-1} + C_{l-j-3}^2 C_{l-j-5}^{m-2} + \dots + (-1)^m C_{l-j-m-1}^m \\ &= C_{l-j-1}^m - C_{l-j-2}^m C_m^1 + C_{l-j-3}^{m-1} C_m^2 + \dots + (-1)^m C_{l-j-m-1}^m \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^m (-1)^k C_m^k C_{l-j-k-1}^m \\ &= C_{l-j-1}^m + \sum_{k=1}^{m-1} (-1)^k (C_{m-1}^k + C_{m-1}^{k-1}) C_{l-j-k-1}^m + (-1)^m C_{l-j-m-1}^m \\ &= C_{l-j-1}^m + \sum_{k=1}^{m-1} (-1)^k C_{m-1}^k C_{l-j-k-1}^m + \sum_{k=1}^{m-1} (-1)^k C_{m-1}^{k-1} C_{l-j-k-1}^m + (-1)^m C_{l-j-m-1}^m \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} (-1)^k C_{m-1}^k C_{l-j-k-1}^m + \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} (-1)^{k+1} C_{m-1}^k C_{l-j-k-2}^m \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} (-1)^k C_{m-1}^k C_{l-j-k-2}^{m-1} = \dots = 1, \quad m \leq \left[\frac{1}{2}(l-j-1) \right], \end{aligned} \quad (4.3.19)$$

它恰是 (4.3.18) 相应项之系数. 所以 g_1 可以写成

$$g_1 = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)} \beta_1(t) e^{\xi_1 - m} \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} \sum_{l=j+1}^N (-k_1 q_1)^j \left[\frac{q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}}{q_1 + k_1} \right] |P(j, l), N-1, N, \tau_1|$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)}e^{\xi_1 - \eta_1} \left\{ \sum_{j=0}^{N-3} \sum_{l=j+1}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j \left[\frac{q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}}{q_1 + k_1} \right] |P(j, l), N-1, N, \tau_1| \right. \\
&\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j \left[\frac{q_1^{N-1-j} - (-k_1)^{N-1-j}}{q_1 + k_1} \right] |P(j), N, \tau_1| \\
&\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j \left[\frac{q_1^{N-j} - (-k_1)^{N-j}}{q_1 + k_1} \right] |P(j), N-1, \tau_1| \\
&\quad \left. + (-k_1 q_1)^{N-1} |\widehat{N-2}, \tau_1| \right\}, \tag{4.3.20}
\end{aligned}$$

其中 $P(j, l)$ 为缺少第 j 列和第 l 列的 $N \times (N-3)$ 矩阵, $P(j)$ 为缺少第 j 列的 $N \times N-2$ 矩阵. 进而成立

$$\begin{aligned}
|P(j, l), N-1, N, \tau_1| &= (-1)^{1+N} |M(j, l), N-1, N|, \quad |P(j), N, \tau_1| = (-1)^{1+N} |M(j), N|, \\
|P(j), N-1, \tau_1| &= (-1)^{1+N} |M(j), N-1|, \quad |\widehat{N-2}, \tau_1| = (-1)^{1+N} A_{1N}. \tag{4.3.21}
\end{aligned}$$

所以

$$\begin{aligned}
g_1 h_1 &= -4\beta_1(t)e^{\xi_1 - \eta_1} \left\{ \sum_{j=0}^{N-3} \sum_{l=j+1}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}] |M(j, l), N-1, N| A_{1N} \right. \\
&\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{N-1-j} - (-k_1)^{N-1-j}] |M(j), N| A_{1N} \\
&\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{N-j} - (-k_1)^{N-j}] |M(j), N-1| A_{1N} \\
&\quad \left. + (-k_1 q_1)^{N-1} (k_1 + q_1) A_{1N}^2 \right\}, \tag{4.3.22}
\end{aligned}$$

上式中以 $j-1$ 代 j , $l-1$ 代 l , 即知在 (4.2.2a) 中左右两端关于 $\beta_1(t)$ 的系数是相等的, 也就是说 Wronskian 行列式 f, g_m, h_m 是 (4.2.2a) 的解.

其次验证 g_m, f 也是方程 (4.2.2b) 的解, 类似地, 只讨论 $m=1$ 的情形. 由 (4.3.4c,d) 可见 $\psi_{j,y} = \psi_{j,xx}$, 因此有

$$\begin{aligned}
g_{1,y} &= 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)}e^{\xi_1 - \eta_1} \\
&\quad [-|L(\widehat{N-4}), L(N-2), L(N-1), \tau_1| + |L(\widehat{N-3}), LN, \tau_1| + (k_1^2 + q_1^2)|L(\widehat{N-2}), \tau_1|], \tag{4.3.23a}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
g_{1,x} &= 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)}e^{\xi_1 - \eta_1} [|L(\widehat{N-3}), L(N-1), \tau_1| + (k_1 - q_1)|L(\widehat{N-2}), \tau_1|], \tag{4.3.23b}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
g_{1,xx} &= 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)}e^{\xi_1 - \eta_1} [|L(\widehat{N-4}), L(N-2), L(N-1), \tau_1| + |L(\widehat{N-3}), LN, \tau_1| \\
&\quad + 2(k_1 - q_1)|L(\widehat{N-3}), L(N-1), \tau_1| + (k_1 - q_1)^2|L(\widehat{N-2}), \tau_1|]. \tag{4.3.23c}
\end{aligned}$$

再由 (4.3.4b) 算得

$$f_x = |\widehat{N-2}, N|, \quad f_{xx} = |\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+1|, \quad (4.3.24a)$$

$$f_y = -|\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+1|, \quad (4.3.24b)$$

把 (4.3.23-24) 代入 (4.3.2b) 式, 则有

$$\begin{aligned} D_y g_1 \cdot f - D_x^2 g_1 \cdot f &= (g_{1,y} - g_{1,xx})f - (f_y + f_{xx})g + 2g_x f_x \\ &= 4\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)}e^{\xi_1 - \eta_1} \{[-|\widehat{L(N-4)}, L(N-2), L(N-1), \tau_1| \\ &\quad + (q_1 - k_1)|\widehat{L(N-3)}, L(N-1), \tau_1| + k_1 q_1 |\widehat{L(N-2)}, \tau_1|]|\widehat{N-1}| \\ &\quad + [|\widehat{L(N-3)}, L(N-1), \tau_1| - (q_1 - k_1)|\widehat{L(N-2)}, \tau_1|]|\widehat{N-2}, N| \\ &\quad - |\widehat{L(N-2)}, \tau_1| |\widehat{N-2}, N+1| \} = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (4.3.25)$$

类似的分析给出

$$(q_1 + k_1)|\widehat{L(N-3)}, L(N-1), \tau_1| = |b \cdot 0 + a \cdot 1 + 2, b \cdot 1 + a \cdot 2 + 3, b \cdot 2 + a \cdot 3 + 4, \dots,$$

$$\begin{aligned} &b \cdot (N-3) + a \cdot (N-2) + N-1, b \cdot (N-1) + a \cdot N + N+1, \tau_1| \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} \sum_{l=j+1}^{N-1} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{l-j} - (k_1)^{l-j}] (q_1 - k_1) |P(j, l), N-1, N, \tau_1| \\ &\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} \sum_{l=j+1}^{N-1} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}] |P(j, l), N-1, N+1, \tau_1| \\ &\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^{j+1} [q_1^{N-j-1} - (-k_1)^{N-j-1}] |P(j), N-1, \tau_1| \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^{N-3} \sum_{l=j+1}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}] (q_1 - k_1) |P(j, l), N-1, N, \tau_1| \\ &\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-3} \sum_{l=j+1}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}] |P(j, l), N-1, N+1, \tau_1| \\ &\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^{j+1} [q_1^{N-1-j} - (-k_1)^{N-1-j}] |P(j), N-1, \tau_1| \\ &\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{N-1-j} - (-k_1)^{N-1-j}] (q_1 - k_1) |P(j), N, \tau_1| \\ &\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{N-1-j} - (-k_1)^{N-1-j}] |P(j), N+1, \tau_1|. \end{aligned} \quad (4.3.26a)$$

$$(q_1 + k_1)|\widehat{L(N-4)}, L(N-2), L(N-1), \tau_1|$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sum_{j=0}^{N-3} \sum_{l=j+1}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}] [(q_1 - k_1)^2 + k_1 q_1] |P(j, l), N-1, N, \tau_1| \\
&\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-3} \sum_{l=j+1}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}] (q_1 - k_1) |P(j, l), N-1, N+1, \tau_1| \\
&\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-3} \sum_{l=j+1}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}] |P(j, l), N, N+1, \tau_1| \\
&\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^{j+2} [q_1^{N-2-j} - (-k_1)^{N-2-j}] |P(j), N-1, \tau_1| \\
&\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^{j+1} [q_1^{N-2-j} - (-k_1)^{N-2-j}] (q_1 - k_1) |P(j), N, \tau_1| \\
&\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^{j+1} [q_1^{N-2-j} - (-k_1)^{N-2-j}] |P(j), N+1, \tau_1|, \tag{4.3.26b}
\end{aligned}$$

把 (4.3.22) 与 (4.3.26) 代入到 (4.2.25) 式即有

$$\begin{aligned}
&4\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} e^{\xi_1 - \eta_1} \left\{ \sum_{j=0}^{N-3} \sum_{l=j+1}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}] [-|P(j, l), N-1, N, \tau_1| \right. \\
&\quad |N-2, N+1| + |P(j, l), N-1, N+1, \tau_1| |N-2, N| - |P(j, l), N, N+1, \tau_1| |N-1|] \\
&\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{N+1-j} - (-k_1)^{N+1-j}] [|P(j), N, \tau_1| |N-1| - |P(j), N-1, \tau_1| |N-2, N|] \\
&\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{N-j} - (-k_1)^{N-j}] [|P(j), N+1, \tau_1| |N-1| - |P(j), N-1, \tau_1| |N-2, N+1|] \\
&\quad + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{N-1-j} - (-k_1)^{N-1-j}] [|P(j), N+1, \tau_1| |N-2, N| - |P(j), N, \tau_1| |N-2, N+1|] \\
&\quad \left. + (-k_1 q_1)^{N-1} (q_1 + k_1) |N-2, \tau_1| [|k_1 q_1| |N-1| - (q_1 - k_1) |N-2, N| - |N-2, N+1|] \right\}, \tag{4.3.27a}
\end{aligned}$$

由于

$$\begin{aligned}
&-|P(j, l), N-1, N, \tau_1| |N-2, N+1| + |P(j, l), N-1, N+1, \tau_1| |N-2, N| \\
&\quad - |P(j, l), N, N+1, \tau_1| |N-1| \\
&= (-1)^{N+1} \begin{vmatrix} P(j, l) & 0 & 0 & 0 & N-1 & N & N+1 & \tau_1 \\ 0 & P(j, l) & j & l & N-1 & N & N+1 & \tau_1 \end{vmatrix} \\
&\quad - |P(j, l), N-1, N, N+1| |N-2, \tau_1| \\
&= -|P(j, l), N-1, N, N+1| |N-2, \tau_1|, \tag{4.3.27b}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& |P(j), N, \tau_1 | \widehat{N-1} | - |P(j), N-1, \tau_1 | \widehat{N-2}, N | \\
&= \begin{vmatrix} P(j) & O & 0 & N-1 & N & \tau_1 \\ O & P(j) & j & N-1 & N & \tau_1 \end{vmatrix} - |P(j), N-1, N | \widehat{N-2}, \tau_1 | \\
&= -|P(j), N-1, N | \widehat{N-2}, \tau_1 |, \tag{4.3.27c}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& [|P(j), N+1, \tau_1 | \widehat{N-1} | - |P(j), N-1, \tau_1 | \widehat{N-2}, N+1 |] \\
&= \begin{vmatrix} P(j) & O & 0 & N-1 & N+1 & \tau_1 \\ O & P(j) & j & N-1 & N+1 & \tau_1 \end{vmatrix} - |P(j), N-1, N+1 | \widehat{N-2}, \tau_1 | \\
&= -|P(j), N-1, N+1 | \widehat{N-2}, \tau_1 |, \tag{4.3.27d}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& [|P(j), N+1, \tau_1 | \widehat{N-2}, N | - |P(j), N, \tau_1 | \widehat{N-2}, N+1 |] \\
&= \begin{vmatrix} P(j) & O & 0 & N & N+1 & \tau_1 \\ O & P(j) & j & N & N+1 & \tau_1 \end{vmatrix} - |P(j), N, N+1 | \widehat{N-2}, \tau_1 | \\
&= -|P(j), N, N+1 | \widehat{N-2}, \tau_1 |, \tag{4.3.27e}
\end{aligned}$$

(4.3.27a) 进而可写成

$$\begin{aligned}
& 4\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)}e^{\xi_1 - \eta_1}(-|\widehat{N-2}, \tau_1 |) \\
& \left\{ \sum_{j=0}^{N-3} \sum_{l=j+1}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}] |P(j, l), N-1, N, N+1 | \right. \\
& + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{N+1-j} - (-k_1)^{N+1-j}] |P(j), N-1, N | \\
& + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{N-j} - (-k_1)^{N-j}] |P(j), N-1, N+1 | \\
& + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{N-1-j} - (-k_1)^{N-1-j}] |P(j), N, N+1 | \\
& \left. - (-k_1 q_1)^{N-1} (q_1 + k_1) [k_1 q_1 | \widehat{N-1} | + (k_1 - q_1) | \widehat{N-2}, N | - | \widehat{N-2}, N+1 |] \right\}, \tag{4.3.27f}
\end{aligned}$$

类似于 \tilde{g}_1 的计算分析, 我们有

$$\begin{aligned}
& (q_1 + k_1) |L(\widehat{N-1})| \\
&= \sum_{j=0}^N \sum_{l=j+1}^{N+1} |(-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}] |P(j, l), N-1, N, N+1 | \\
&= \sum_{j=0}^{N-3} \sum_{l=j+1}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{l-j} - (-k_1)^{l-j}] |P(j, l), N-1, N, N+1 |
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{N-1-j} - (-k_1)^{N-1-j}] |P(j), N, N+1| \\
& + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{N-j} - (-k_1)^{N-j}] |P(j), N-1, N+1| \\
& + \sum_{j=0}^{N-2} (-k_1 q_1)^j [q_1^{N+1-j} - (-k_1)^{N+1-j}] |P(j), N-1, N| \\
& + (-k_1 q_1)^{N-1} (q_1 + k_1) |\widehat{N-2}, N+1| + (-k_1 q_1)^N (q_1 + k_1) |\widehat{N-1}| \\
& + (-k_1 q_1)^{N-1} (q_1^2 - k_1^2) |\widehat{N-2}, N|, \tag{4.3.28}
\end{aligned}$$

比较 (4.3.27f) 与 (4.3.28), 并注意

$$L(e^{\xi_1} + e^{-\eta_1}) = [\partial^2 + (q_1 - k_1)\partial + (-k_1 q_1)](e^{\xi_1} + e^{-\eta_1}) = 0, \tag{4.3.29}$$

所以 $|L(\widehat{N-1})| = 0$, 从而 (4.3.27f) 为零. 也就是说 Wronskian 行列式 g_m, f 是 (4.2.2b) 的解.

最后我们验证 h_m, f 是 (4.2.2c) 的解, 同样取 $m = 1$, 由 wronskian 行列式的性质与 (4.3.4b), 算得

$$h_1 = |\widehat{N-2}, \tau_1|, \quad h_{1,x} = |\widehat{N-3}, N-1, \tau_1|, \tag{4.3.30a}$$

$$h_{1,xx} = |\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, \tau_1| + |\widehat{N-3}, N, \tau_1|, \tag{4.3.30b}$$

$$h_{1,y} = |\widehat{N-4}, N-1, N-2, \tau_1| + |\widehat{N-3}, N, \tau_1|, \tag{4.3.30c}$$

把 (4.3.24) 与 (4.3.30) 代入 (4.2.2c), 则有

$$\begin{aligned}
D_y h_1 \cdot f + D_x^2 h_1 \cdot f &= (h_{1,y} f - h_1 f_y) + (h_{1,xx} f - 2h_{1,x} f_x + h_1 f_{xx}) \\
&= (h_{1,y} + h_{1,xx}) f + (-f_y + f_{xx}) h_1 - 2h_{1,x} f_x \\
&= 2|\widehat{N-3}, N, \tau_1| |\widehat{N-1}| + 2|\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N| |\widehat{N-2}, \tau_1| - 2|\widehat{N-3}, N-1, \tau_1| |\widehat{N-2}, N| \\
&= \begin{vmatrix} \widehat{N-3} & 0 & N-2 & N-1 & N & \tau_1 \\ 0 & \widehat{N-3} & N-2 & N-1 & N & \tau_1 \end{vmatrix} = 0, \tag{4.3.31}
\end{aligned}$$

所以 h_1, f 满足方程 (4.2.2c) 的. 这样我们就完全证明了 (4.3.1-3) 是具自容源 KP 方程的 Wronskian 形式的解.

4.4. 两种解的一致性

前面我们得到具自容源 KP 方程两种形式的解, 一种是利用 Hirota 方法, 给出单孤子解, 双孤子解和三孤子解, 并且猜测出多孤子解的一般表达式 (4.2.19-21), 一种是 Wronskian 形式的解 (4.3.1-3). 下面我们验证这两种解的一致性.

因为在求出 $\phi_j(t, x)$ 对 x 的各阶导数后, Wronskian 行列式成为

$$f = |e^{\xi_j} + (-1)^{j-1} e^{-\eta_j}, k_j e^{\xi_j} + q_j (-1)^j e^{-\eta_j}, \dots, k_j^{N-1} e^{\xi_j} + q_j^{N-1} (-1)^{j+N} e^{-\eta_j}|, \quad (4.4.1)$$

它的每一行是两个指数函数相加, 因此可分成 2^n 个行列式的和, 然后提出各行列式中每一行的公因式指数函数与偶数行的符号, 则 Wronskian 行列式又化成

$$f = \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} (2\epsilon_2 - 1)(2\epsilon_4 - 1) \cdots (2\epsilon_{2[\frac{N}{2}]} - 1) \Delta(\epsilon_1 k_1 + (\epsilon_1 - 1)q_1, \epsilon_2 k_2 + (\epsilon_2 - 1)q_2, \dots, \epsilon_N k_N + (\epsilon_N - 1)q_N) \exp\left\{\sum_{j=1}^N [\epsilon_j \xi_j + (\epsilon_j - 1)\eta_j]\right\}, \quad (4.4.2)$$

其中对 ϵ 的和式表示 $\epsilon_j (j = 1, 2, \dots, n)$ 取 0 或 1 时所有可能项之和, 而行列式 $\Delta(\epsilon_1 k_1 + (\epsilon_1 - 1)q_1, \epsilon_2 k_2 + (\epsilon_2 - 1)q_2, \dots, \epsilon_N k_N + (\epsilon_N - 1)q_N)$ 是元为 $\epsilon_1 k_1 + (\epsilon_1 - 1)q_1, \epsilon_2 k_2 + (\epsilon_2 - 1)q_2, \dots, \epsilon_N k_N + (\epsilon_N - 1)q_N$ 的 Vandermonde 行列式, 其值为

$$\begin{aligned} & \Delta(\epsilon_1 k_1 + (\epsilon_1 - 1)q_1, \epsilon_2 k_2 + (\epsilon_2 - 1)q_2, \dots, \epsilon_N k_N + (\epsilon_N - 1)q_N) \\ &= \prod_{1 \leq j < l}^N [\epsilon_l k_l + (\epsilon_l - 1)q_l - \epsilon_j k_j - (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j]. \end{aligned} \quad (4.4.3)$$

对于固定的 m 此等式的右端含奇数个形如 $[\epsilon_{2m} k_{2m} + (\epsilon_{2m} - 1)q_{2m} - \epsilon_j k_j - (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j]$ 的因式, 而只含形如因式 $[\epsilon_{2m+1} k_l + (\epsilon_{2m+1} - 1)q_{2m+1} - \epsilon_j k_j - (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j]$ 偶数个, 所以我们有

$$\begin{aligned} & (2\epsilon_2 - 1)(2\epsilon_4 - 1) \cdots (2\epsilon_{2[\frac{N}{2}]} - 1) \Delta(\epsilon_1 k_1 + (\epsilon_1 - 1)q_1, \epsilon_2 k_2 + (\epsilon_2 - 1)q_2, \dots, \epsilon_N k_N + (\epsilon_N - 1)q_N) \\ &= (-1)^{\frac{N(N-1)}{2}} \prod_{1 \leq j < l}^N (2\epsilon_l - 1) [\epsilon_j k_j + (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j - \epsilon_l k_l - (\epsilon_l - 1)q_l], \end{aligned} \quad (4.4.4)$$

将 (4.4.4) 代入 (4.4.2) 即得 Wronskian 行列式 (4.4.1) 的显式

$$f = (-1)^{\frac{N(N-1)}{2}} \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \prod_{1 \leq j < l}^N (2\epsilon_l - 1) [\epsilon_j k_j + (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j - \epsilon_l k_l - (\epsilon_l - 1)q_l] \exp\left\{\sum_{j=1}^N [\epsilon_j \xi_j + (\epsilon_j - 1)\eta_j]\right\}. \quad (4.4.5)$$

它与直接从方程应用双线性导数法求得的解公式 (4.2.19) 是一致的. 事实上, 容易看出无论 ϵ_j 与 ϵ_l 同号或异号时均成立等式

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{(2\epsilon_l - 1) [\epsilon_j k_j + (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j - \epsilon_l k_l - (\epsilon_l - 1)q_l]}{q_j - q_l} \\ &= \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j}\right)^{(1-\epsilon_l)\epsilon_j} \left(\frac{k_l + q_j}{q_l - q_j}\right)^{(1-\epsilon_j)\epsilon_l} \left(\frac{k_l - k_j}{q_l - q_j}\right)^{\epsilon_j \epsilon_l} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \left(\frac{k_l + q_j}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_l} \left(\frac{q_l - q_j}{k_j + q_l} \right)^{\epsilon_j \epsilon_l} \left(\frac{q_l - q_j}{k_l + q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j \epsilon_l} \left(\frac{k_l - k_j}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j \epsilon_l} \\
&= \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \left(\frac{k_l + q_j}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_l} \left[\frac{(k_l - k_j)(q_l - q_j)}{(k_j + q_l)(k_l + q_j)} \right]^{\epsilon_j \epsilon_l}, \tag{4.4.6a}
\end{aligned}$$

其中

$$\prod_{1 \leq j < l \leq N} \left[\frac{(k_l - k_j)(q_l - q_j)}{(k_j + q_l)(k_l + q_j)} \right]^{\epsilon_j \epsilon_l} = \exp\left(\sum_{1 \leq j < l} \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl} \right), \tag{4.4.6b}$$

假设 $0 < k_1 < k_2 < \dots < k_N, 0 < q_1 < q_2 < \dots < q_N$, 由于

$$\begin{aligned}
\prod_{1 \leq j < l} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \left(\frac{k_l + q_j}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_l} &= \prod_{j > l} \left(\frac{k_l + q_j}{q_j - q_l} \right)^{\epsilon_l} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_j - q_l} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \\
&= \prod_{j > l} (-1)^{\epsilon_l} (-1)^{\epsilon_j} \left(\frac{k_l + q_j}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_l} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j}, \tag{4.4.6c}
\end{aligned}$$

所以有

$$\begin{aligned}
\prod_{1 \leq j < l} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \left(\frac{k_l + q_j}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_l} &= \sqrt{\prod_{j > l} (-1)^{\epsilon_l} (-1)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j \neq l} \left[\left(\frac{k_l + q_j}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_l} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \right]} \\
&= \sqrt{\prod_{j \neq l} (-1)^{\epsilon_l} \prod_{j \neq l} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j \neq l} \left(\frac{k_l + q_j}{q_j - q_l} \right)^{\epsilon_l} \prod_{j \neq l} (-1)^{\epsilon_l}} = \sqrt{\prod_{j \neq l} (-1)^{2\epsilon_l} \prod_{j \neq l} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{2\epsilon_j}}, \tag{4.4.6d}
\end{aligned}$$

即

$$\prod_{1 \leq j < l} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \left(\frac{k_l + q_j}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_l} = \prod_{j > l} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_j - q_l} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j < l} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j}. \tag{4.4.6e}$$

于是 f 的表达式 (4.4.2) 就化为

$$f = \prod_{1 \leq j < l} (q_l - q_j) e^{\sum_{j=1}^N (-\eta_j)} \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N \epsilon_j (\xi'_j + \eta'_j) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl} \right], \tag{4.4.7}$$

其中

$$e^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j \neq l} (k_j + q_l) = e^{\xi'_j}, \quad e^{\eta_j} \prod_{j > l} (q_j - q_l)^{-1} \prod_{l > j} (q_l - q_j)^{-1} = e^{-\eta'_j}. \tag{4.4.8a, b}$$

由于 $[\ln a f(x, t)]_{xx} = [\ln f(x, t)]_{xx}$, 其中 a 与 x 无关, 所以 (4.4.7) 与 (4.2.19) 是一致的.

类似于上面 f 的方法, 下面我们计算 h_m 和 g_m 的值, 首先看 h_m

$$h_m = 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)} \cdot \begin{vmatrix} \phi_1 & \partial\phi_1 & \cdots & \partial^{N-2}\phi_1 & 0 \\ \phi_2 & \partial\phi_2 & \cdots & \partial^{N-2}\phi_2 & 0 \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \phi_{m-1} & \partial\phi_{m-1} & \cdots & \partial^{N-2}\phi_{m-1} & 0 \\ \phi_m & \partial\phi_m & \cdots & \partial^{N-2}\phi_m & 1 \\ \phi'_{m+1} & \partial\phi'_{m+1} & \cdots & \partial^{N-2}\phi'_{m+1} & \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \phi'_N & \partial\phi'_N & \cdots & \partial^{N-2}\phi'_N & 0 \end{vmatrix}, \quad (4.4.9)$$

其中 $\phi'_j = (-i)[e^{\xi_j + \frac{\pi}{2}i} + (-1)^j e^{-\eta_j - \frac{\pi}{2}i}]$. 那么我们有

$$\begin{aligned} h_m &= 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)}(-1)^{N-m}(-i)^{N-m} \\ &\sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \prod_{k=1, k \neq \frac{m}{2}} (2\epsilon_{2k} - 1) \prod_{1 \leq j < l, j, l \neq m} [\epsilon_l k_l + (\epsilon_l - 1)q_l - \epsilon_j k_j - (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j] \\ &\exp\left\{ \sum_{j < m} [\epsilon_j \xi_j + (\epsilon_j - 1)\eta_j] + \sum_{j > m} [\epsilon_j(\xi_j + i\frac{\pi}{2}) + (\epsilon_j - 1)(\eta_j + i\frac{\pi}{2})] \right\} \\ &= 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)}(-1)^{N-m}(-i)^{N-m}(-1)^{\frac{(N-1)(N-2)}{2}} \\ &\sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \prod_{1 \leq j < l, j, l \neq m} (2\epsilon_l - 1)[\epsilon_l k_l + (\epsilon_l - 1)q_l - \epsilon_j k_j - (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j] \\ &\exp\left\{ \sum_{j < m} [\epsilon_j \xi_j + (\epsilon_j - 1)\eta_j] + \sum_{j > m} [\epsilon_j(\xi_j + i\frac{\pi}{2}) + (\epsilon_j - 1)(\eta_j + i\frac{\pi}{2})] \right\}. \quad (4.4.10) \end{aligned}$$

利用 (4.4.6), 我们进一步有

$$\begin{aligned} h_m &= 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)} \prod_{1 \leq j < l, j, l \neq m} (q_l - q_j) \exp\left[\sum_{j=1, j \neq m}^N (-\eta_j) \right] \\ &\sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \prod_{j > l, j, l \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_j - q_l} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j < l, j, l \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \\ &\exp\left[\sum_{j < m} \epsilon_j(\xi_j + \eta_j) + \sum_{j > m} \epsilon_j(\xi_j + \eta_j + i\pi) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l, j, l \neq m} \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl} \right], \quad (4.4.11) \end{aligned}$$

其中

$$\begin{aligned} &\prod_{j > l, j, l \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_j - q_l} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j < l, j, l \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \\ &= \prod_{j > l, j, l \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_j - q_l} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j < l, j, l \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j > m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_m}{q_j - q_m} \right)^{\epsilon_j - \epsilon_j} \prod_{j < m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_m}{q_m - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j - \epsilon_j} \end{aligned}$$

$$= \prod_{j>l, j \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_j - q_l} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j<l, j \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j>m} \left(\frac{q_j - q_m}{k_j + q_m} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j<m} \left(\frac{q_m - q_j}{k_j + q_m} \right)^{\epsilon_j}, \quad (4.4.12)$$

所以 h_m 的表达式为

$$h_m = 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)} \prod_{1 \leq j < l, j, l \neq m} (q_l - q_j) \exp\left[\sum_{j=1, j \neq m}^N (-\eta_j) \right] \\ \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{j<m} \epsilon_j (\xi'_j + \eta'_j + C_{mj}) + \sum_{j>m} \epsilon_j (\xi'_j + \eta'_j + i\pi + C_{jm}) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl} \right]. \quad (4.4.13)$$

由 (4.2.1c), 我们可以得到

$$\Psi_m = 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)} \left\{ \prod_{1 \leq j < l, j, l \neq m} (q_l - q_j) \exp\left[\sum_{j=1, j \neq m}^N (-\eta_j) \right] \right. \\ \left. \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{j<m} \epsilon_j (\xi'_j + \eta'_j + C_{mj}) + \sum_{j>m} \epsilon_j (\xi'_j + \eta'_j + i\pi + C_{jm}) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl} \right] \right\} / \\ \left\{ \prod_{1 \leq j < l}^N (q_l - q_j) e^{\sum_{j=1}^N (-\eta_j)} \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N \epsilon_j (\xi'_j + \eta'_j) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl} \right] \right\} \\ = 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)} \frac{e^{\eta_m}}{\prod_{j>m} (q_j - q_m) \prod_{j<m} (q_m - q_l)} \\ \frac{\exp\left[\sum_{j<m} \epsilon_j (\xi'_j + \eta'_j + C_{mj}) + \sum_{j>m} \epsilon_j (\xi'_j + \eta'_j + i\pi + C_{jm}) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl} \right]}{\exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N \epsilon_j (\xi'_j + \eta'_j) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl} \right]} \\ = 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)} e^{\eta'_m} \\ \frac{\exp\left[\sum_{j<m} \epsilon_j (\xi'_j + \eta'_j + C_{mj}) + \sum_{j>m} \epsilon_j (\xi'_j + \eta'_j + i\pi + C_{jm}) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl} \right]}{\exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N \epsilon_j (\xi'_j + \eta'_j) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl} \right]}, \quad (4.4.14)$$

其解与 Hirota 方法得到的解 (4.2.19), (4.2.21b) 与 (4.2.1c) 是一致的.

最后我们计算 g_m 的值, 由 (4.2.2) 我们有

$$g_m = 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)}e^{\xi_m - \eta_m} \begin{vmatrix} \psi_1 & \partial\psi_1 & \cdots & \partial^{N-2}\psi_1 & 0 \\ \psi_2 & \partial\psi_2 & \cdots & \partial^{N-2}\psi_2 & 0 \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \psi_{m-1} & \partial\psi_{m-1} & \cdots & \partial^{N-2}\psi_{m-1} & 0 \\ \psi_m & \partial\psi_m & \cdots & \partial^{N-2}\psi_m & 1 \\ \psi'_{m+1} & \partial\psi'_{m+1} & \cdots & \partial^{N-2}\psi'_{m+1} & 0 \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \psi'_N & \partial\psi'_N & \cdots & \partial^{N-2}\psi'_N & 0 \end{vmatrix}, \quad (4.4.15a)$$

其中

$$\psi'_j = (-i)[(k_j - k_m)(k_j + q_m)e^{\xi_j + \frac{\pi}{2}i} + (-1)^j(q_j - q_m)(q_j + k_m)e^{-\eta_j - \frac{\pi}{2}i}], \quad (j > m). \quad (4.4.15b)$$

类似于前面 f, h_m 的计算, 我们有

$$\begin{aligned} g_m &= 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)}(-1)^{N-m}(-i)^{N-m} \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \prod_{k=1, k \neq \lfloor \frac{m}{2} \rfloor}^{\lfloor \frac{N}{2} \rfloor} (2\epsilon_{2k} - 1) \\ &\quad \prod_{1 \leq j < l, j, l \neq m}^N [\epsilon_l k_l + (\epsilon_l - 1)q_l - \epsilon_j k_j - (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j] \\ &\quad \exp\left\{ \sum_{j < m} [\epsilon_j \xi_j + (\epsilon_j - 1)\eta_j] + \sum_{j > m} [\epsilon_j(\xi_j + i\frac{\pi}{2}) + (\epsilon_j - 1)(\eta_j + i\frac{\pi}{2})] \right\} \\ &\quad \prod_{j < m} \{[(k_m - k_j)(k_j + q_m)]^{\epsilon_j} [(q_m - q_j)(q_j + k_m)]^{1-\epsilon_j}\} \\ &\quad \prod_{j > m} \{[(k_j - k_m)(k_j + q_m)]^{\epsilon_j} [(q_j - q_m)(q_j + k_m)]^{1-\epsilon_j}\} \\ &= 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)}(-1)^{\frac{N(N-1)}{2}} \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \prod_{1 \leq j < l, j, l \neq m} (2\epsilon_l - 1) [\epsilon_j k_j + (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j - \epsilon_l k_l - (\epsilon_l - 1)q_l] \\ &\quad \exp\left[\sum_{j=1, j \neq m}^N (-\eta_j) \right] \prod_{j=1, j \neq m} \left[\frac{(k_j - k_m)(k_j + q_m)}{(q_j - q_m)(q_j + k_m)} \right]^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j > m} [(q_j - q_m)(q_j + k_m)] \\ &\quad \prod_{j < m} [(q_m - q_j)(q_j + k_m)] \exp\left[\sum_{j < m} \epsilon_j(\xi_j + \eta_j) + \sum_{j > m} \epsilon_j(\xi_j + \eta_j + i\pi) \right], \quad (4.4.16) \end{aligned}$$

利用 (4.4.6), 上式可进一步写成

$$\begin{aligned} g_m &= 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)\beta_m(t)} \prod_{1 \leq j < l, j, l \neq m} (q_l - q_j) \prod_{j > m} [(q_j - q_m)(q_j + k_m)] \prod_{j < m} [(q_m - q_j)(q_j + k_m)] \\ &\quad \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \prod_{j=1, j \neq m}^N (-\eta_j) \sum_{j > l, j, l \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_j - q_l} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j < l, j, l \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j} \right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j=1, j \neq m} \left[\frac{(k_j - k_m)(k_j + q_m)}{(q_j - q_m)(q_j + k_m)} \right]^{\epsilon_j} \end{aligned}$$

$$\exp\left[\sum_{j<m} \epsilon_j(\xi_j + \eta_j) + \sum_{j>m} \epsilon_j(\xi_j + \eta_j + i\pi) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l, j, l \neq m} \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl}\right], \quad (4.4.17a)$$

其中

$$\begin{aligned} & \prod_{j>l, j, l \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_j - q_l}\right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j<l, j, l \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j}\right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j=1, j \neq m} \left[\frac{(k_j - k_m)(k_j + q_m)}{(q_j - q_m)(q_j + k_m)}\right]^{\epsilon_j} \\ = & \prod_{j>l, j, l \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_j - q_l}\right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j<l, j, l \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j}\right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j>m} \left[\frac{(k_j - k_m)(k_j + q_m)}{(q_j - q_m)(q_j + k_m)}\right]^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j<m} \left[\frac{(k_j - k_m)(k_j + q_m)}{(q_j - q_m)(q_j + k_m)}\right]^{\epsilon_j} \\ = & \prod_{j>l, j \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_j - q_l}\right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j<l, j \neq m} \left(\frac{k_j + q_l}{q_l - q_j}\right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j>m} \left(\frac{k_j - k_m}{q_j + k_m}\right)^{\epsilon_j} \prod_{j<m} \left(\frac{k_m - k_j}{q_j + k_m}\right)^{\epsilon_j}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.4.17b)$$

所以有

$$\begin{aligned} g_m = & 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)}\beta_m \prod_{1 \leq j < l} (q_l - q_j) \prod_{j \neq m} (q_j + k_m) e^{\xi_m} \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N (-\eta_j)\right] \\ & \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{j<m} \epsilon_j(\xi'_j + \eta'_j + B_{mj}) + \sum_{j>m} \epsilon_j(\xi'_j + \eta'_j + i\pi + B_{jm}) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl}\right]. \end{aligned} \quad (4.4.18)$$

由 (4.2.1b), (4.4.8a) 我们可以计算出

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_m = & 2\sqrt{2(k_m + q_m)}\beta_m e^{\xi'_m} \\ & \frac{\sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{j<m} \epsilon_j(\xi'_j + \eta'_j + B_{mj}) + \sum_{j>m} \epsilon_j(\xi'_j + \eta'_j + i\pi + B_{jm}) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl}\right]}{\sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N \epsilon_j(\xi'_j + \eta'_j) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl}\right]}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.4.19)$$

即与 Hirota 方法得到的解是一致的.

4.5 自容源 KP 方程的新解

前面介绍过一些孤子方程的新解, 类似地也可以得到具自容源 KP 方程的新解. 下面我们只介绍当 $N = 1$ 时的新解.

我们取

$$g_1^{(1)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)}\beta_1(t)e^{\xi_1}, \quad (4.5.1a)$$

$$h_1^{(1)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)}\beta_1(t)e^{\eta_1}, \quad (4.5.1b)$$

$$f^{(2)} = e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} m_1, \quad (4.5.1c)$$

其中

$$\xi_1 = k_1 x + k_1^2 y - 4k_1^3 t - \int_0^t \beta_1(z) dz + \xi_1^{(0)}, \quad \eta_1 = q_1 x - q_1^2 y - 4q_1^3 t - \int_0^t \beta_1(z) dz + \eta_1^{(0)}, \quad (4.5.1d)$$

$$\tilde{\xi}_1 = k_1 x + k_1^2 y - 4k_1^3 t + \tilde{\xi}_1^{(0)}, \quad \tilde{\eta}_1 = q_1 x - q_1^2 y - 4q_1^3 t + \tilde{\eta}_1^{(0)}, \quad (4.5.1e)$$

$$m_1 = a_{11} x + a_{11}(k_1 - q_1)y + a_{11}(-6k_1^2 - 6q_1^2)t + a_{10}. \quad (4.5.1f)$$

把上式代入 (4.2.4-6), 利用公式 (2.1.15), 经过大量的计算可得到

$$g_1^{(3)} = -\frac{a_{11}}{2(k_1 + q_1)} 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} e^{\xi_1 + \tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1}, \quad (4.5.2a)$$

$$h_1^{(3)} = -\frac{a_{11}}{2(k_1 + q_1)} 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} e^{\eta_1 + \tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1}, \quad (4.5.2b)$$

$$f^{(4)} = -\frac{a_{11}^2}{4(k_1 + q_1)^2} e^{2(\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1)}, \quad (4.5.2c)$$

$$g_1^{(j)} = 0, \quad h_1^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 5, 7, \dots, \quad (4.5.2d)$$

$$f^{(i)} = 0, \quad i = 6, 8, \dots. \quad (4.5.2e)$$

所以具自容源 KP 方程的新单孤子解为

$$u = 2\{\ln[1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1} m_1 - \frac{a_{11}^2}{4(k_1 + q_1)^2} e^{2(\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1)}]\}_{xx}, \quad (4.5.3a)$$

$$\Phi_1 = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} e^{\xi_1} \frac{1 - \frac{a_{11}}{2(k_1 + q_1)} 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} e^{\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1}}{1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1} m_1 - \frac{a_{11}^2}{4(k_1 + q_1)^2} e^{2(\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1)}}, \quad (4.5.3b)$$

$$\Psi_1 = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} e^{\eta_1} \frac{1 - \frac{a_{11}}{2(k_1 + q_1)} 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} e^{\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1}}{1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1} m_1 - \frac{a_{11}^2}{4(k_1 + q_1)^2} e^{2(\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1)}}, \quad (4.5.3c)$$

若取 $g_1^{(1)}, f_1^{(1)}$ 为 (4.5.1a,b),

$$f^{(2)} = e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1} m_1 + e^{\tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2} m_2, \quad (4.5.4a)$$

$$m_j = a_{j1} x + a_{j1}(k_j - q_j)y + a_{j1}(-6k_j^2 - 6q_j^2)t + a_{j0}, \quad j = 1, 2. \quad (4.5.4b)$$

由 (4.2.4-6), 可以算得

$$g_1^{(3)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} [e^{\xi_1 + \tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1} c_1 + e^{\xi_1 + \tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2} (m_2 c_2 + c_3)], \quad (4.5.5a)$$

$$h_1^{(3)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} [e^{\eta_1 + \tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1} c_4 + e^{\xi_1 + \tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2} (m_2 c_5 + c_6)], \quad (4.5.5b)$$

$$f^{(4)} = e^{2(\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1)} c_7 + e^{2(\tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2)} c_8 + e^{\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1 + \tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2} (m_1 m_2 c_9 + m_1 c_{10} + m_2 c_{11} + c_{12}) \\ + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2} (m_2 c_{13} + c_{14}), \quad (4.5.5c)$$

$$g_1^{(5)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} [e^{\xi_1 + 2(\tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2)} c_{15} + e^{\xi_1 + \tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1 + \tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2} (m_2 c_{16} + c_{17})], \quad (4.5.6a)$$

$$h_1^{(5)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} [e^{\eta_1 + 2(\tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2)} c_{18} + e^{\eta_1 + \tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1 + \tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2} (m_2 c_{19} + c_{20})], \quad (4.5.6b)$$

$$f^{(6)} = e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + 2(\tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2)} c_{21} + e^{\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1 + 2(\tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2)} (m_1 c_{22} + c_{23}) + e^{2(\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1) + \tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2} (m_2 c_{24} + c_{25}), \quad (4.5.6c)$$

$$g_1^{(7)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} e^{\xi_1 + \tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1 + 2(\tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2)} c_{26}, \quad (4.5.7a)$$

$$h_1^{(7)} = 2\sqrt{2(k_1 + q_1)\beta_1(t)} e^{\eta_1 + \tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1 + 2(\tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2)} c_{27}, \quad (4.5.7b)$$

$$f^{(8)} = e^{2(\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1 + \tilde{\xi}_2 + \tilde{\eta}_2)} c_{28}, \quad (4.5.7c)$$

$$g_1^{(j)} = 0, \quad h_1^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 9, 11, \dots, \quad (4.5.8a)$$

$$f^{(l)} = 0, \quad l = 6, 8, \dots, \quad (4.5.8b)$$

其中

$$c_1 = -\frac{a_{11}}{2(k_1 + q_1)}, \quad c_2 = \frac{k_1 - k_2}{(k_1 + q_2)}, \quad c_3 = -\frac{a_{21}(2k_1 - k_2 + q_2)}{2(k_1 + q_2)^2}, \quad c_4 = c_1, \quad (4.5.9a)$$

$$c_5 = \frac{q_1 - q_2}{(k_2 + q_1)}, \quad c_6 = -\frac{a_{21}(2q_1 + k_2 - q_2)}{2(k_2 + q_1)^2}, \quad c_7 = -c_1^2, \quad (4.5.9b)$$

$$c_8 = -\frac{a_{21}^2}{4(k_2 + q_2)^2}, \quad c_9 = \frac{(k_1 - k_2)(q_1 - q_2)}{(k_2 + q_1)(k_1 + q_2)}, \quad (4.5.9c)$$

$$c_{10} = -\frac{a_{21}(k_1 + q_1)(k_1 k_2 - k_2^2 + 2k_1 q_1 - k_2 q_1 - k_1 q_2 + q_1 q_2 - q_2^2)}{2(k_2 + q_1)^2(k_1 + q_2)^2}, \quad (4.5.9d)$$

$$c_{11} = \frac{a_{11}(k_2 + q_2)(k_1^2 + k_2 q_1 - 2k_2 q_2 + q_1^2 - q_1 q_2 - k_1 k_2 + k_1 q_2)}{2(k_2 + q_1)^2(k_1 + q_2)^2}, \quad (4.5.9e)$$

$$c_{12} = a_{11} a_{21} \left[\frac{k_2^3(q_1 - q_2) + k_2^2 q_1(2q_1 - q_2) + q_1^2 q_2^2 + k_1^3(-q_1 + q_2) + k_2(q_1^3 + 2q_1 q_2^2 - q_2^3)}{2(k_2 + q_1)^3(k_1 + q_2)^3} \right. \\ \left. + \frac{k_1^2[k_2^2 + 2k_2 q_1 + q_2(-q_1 + 2q_2)] + k_1[-q_1^3 + 2k_2^2 q_2 + 2q_1^2 q_2 + q_2^3 - k_2(q_1^2 - 6q_1 q_2 + q_2^2)]}{2(k_2 + q_1)^3(k_1 + q_2)^3} \right], \quad (4.5.9f)$$

$$c_{13} = c_9, \quad c_{14} = -\frac{a_{21}(k_1 + q_1)(k_1 k_2 - k_2^2 + 2k_1 q_1 - k_2 q_1 - k_1 q_2 + q_1 q_2 - q_2^2)}{2(k_2 + q_1)^2(k_1 + q_2)^2}, \quad (4.5.9g)$$

$$c_{15} = -\frac{a_{21}^2(k_1 - k_2)^2}{4(k_1 + q_2)^2(k_2 + q_2)^2}, \quad c_{16} = -\frac{a_{11}(k_1 - k_2)^2(q_1 - q_2)}{2(k_1 + q_1)(k_2 + q_1)(k_1 + q_2)^2}, \quad (4.5.10a)$$

$$c_{17} = a_{11} a_{21} (k_1 - k_2) \left[\frac{k_1^2(k_2 + 2q_1 - q_2) + 2q_1(q_1 - q_2)q_2 + k_2^2(-2q_1 + q_2)}{4(k_1 + q_1)(k_2 + q_1)^2(k_1 + q_2)^3} \right. \\ \left. + \frac{-k_2(2q_1^2 - 2q_1 q_2 + q_2^2) - k_1(k_2^2 - 2k_2 q_1 - 4q_1^2 + 2k_2 q_2 + 2q_1 q_2 + q_2^2)}{4(k_1 + q_1)(k_2 + q_1)^2(k_1 + q_2)^3} \right], \quad (4.5.10b)$$

$$c_{18} = -\frac{a_{21}^2(q_1 - q_2)^2}{4(k_2 + q_1)^2(k_2 + q_2)^2}, \quad c_{19} = -\frac{a_{11}(k_1 - k_2)(q_1 - q_2)^2}{2(k_1 + q_1)(k_2 + q_1)^2(k_1 + q_2)}, \quad (4.5.10c)$$

$$c_{20} = a_{11} a_{21} (q_1 - q_2) \left[\frac{2k_1^2(k_2 + 2q_1 - q_2) + q_1(q_1 - q_2)q_2 - k_2^2(q_1 + q_2)}{4(k_1 + q_1)(k_2 + q_1)^3(k_1 + q_2)^2} \right. \\ \left. + \frac{k_2(-q_1^2 - 2q_1 q_2 + q_2^2) - 2k_1(k_2^2 - q_1^2 + k_2(q_1 - q_2) - q_1 q_2 + q_2^2)}{4(k_1 + q_1)(k_2 + q_1)^3(k_1 + q_2)^2} \right], \quad (4.5.10d)$$

$$c_{21} = c_{22} = -\frac{a_{21}^2(k_1 - k_2)^2(q_1 - q_2)^2}{4(k_2 + q_1)^2(k_1 + q_2)^2(k_2 + q_2)^2}, \quad (4.5.10e)$$

$$c_{23} = -\frac{a_{11}a_{21}^2(k_1 - k_2)(q_1 - q_2)[k_1^2 + k_2(q_1 - 2q_2) + q_1(q_1 - q_2) + k_1(-k_2 + q_2)]}{4(k_2 + q_1)^3(k_1 + q_2)^3(k_2 + q_2)}, \quad (4.5.10f)$$

$$c_{24} = -\frac{a_{11}^2(k_1 - k_2)^2(q_1 - q_2)^2}{4(k_1 + q_1)^2(k_2 + q_1)^2(k_1 + q_2)^2}, \quad (4.5.10g)$$

$$c_{25} = \frac{a_{11}^2 a_{21}(k_1 - k_2)(q_1 - q_2)(k_1 k_2 - k_2^2 + 2k_1 q_1 - k_2 q_1 - k_1 q_2 + q_1 q_2 - q_2^2)}{4(k_1 + q_1)(k_2 + q_1)^3(k_1 + q_2)^3}. \quad (4.5.10h)$$

$$c_{26} = \frac{a_{11}a_{21}^2(k_1 - k_2)^4(q_1 - q_2)^2}{8(k_1 + q_1)(k_2 + q_1)^2(k_1 + q_2)^4(k_2 + q_2)^2}, \quad (4.5.11a)$$

$$c_{27} = \frac{a_{11}a_{21}^2(k_1 - k_2)^2(q_1 - q_2)^4}{8(k_1 + q_1)(k_2 + q_1)^4(k_1 + q_2)^2(k_2 + q_2)^2}, \quad (4.5.11b)$$

$$c_{28} = \frac{a_{11}^2 a_{21}^2(k_1 - k_2)^4(q_1 - q_2)^4}{16(k_1 + q_1)^2(k_2 + q_1)^4(k_1 + q_2)^4(k_2 + q_2)^2}, \quad (4.5.11c)$$

一般地, 若取 $g_1^{(1)}, h_1^{(1)}$ 为 (4.5.1a.b)

$$f^{(1)} = e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + \sum_{j=1}^N e^{\tilde{\xi}_j + \tilde{\eta}_j} m_j, \quad (4.5.12a)$$

$$\tilde{\xi}_j = k_j x + k_j^2 y - 4k_j^3 t + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad \tilde{\eta}_j = q_j x - q_j^2 y - 4q_j^3 t + \tilde{\eta}_j^{(0)}, \quad (4.5.12b)$$

$$m_j = a_{j1} x + a_{j1}(k_j - q_j)y + a_{j1}(-6k_j^2 - 6q_j^2)t + a_{j0}, \quad (4.5.12c)$$

我们有

$$g_1 = \sum_{\mu=0,1, \gamma=0,1,2} \left(-\frac{a_{11}}{2(k_1 + q_1)}\right)^\mu \prod_{j=2}^N \left[-\frac{a_{j1}^2}{4(k_j + q_j)^2}\right]^{\frac{\gamma_j(\gamma_j-1)}{2}} \left[\frac{1}{2}a_{j1}(\partial_{q_j} + \partial_{k_j}) + a_{j0}\right]^{\gamma_j(2-\gamma_j)} \\ \exp[\xi_1 + \mu(\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1) + \sum_{j=2}^N [\gamma_j(\tilde{\xi}_j + \tilde{\eta}_j) + \gamma_j B_{j1} + \mu\gamma_j A_{j1}] + \sum_{2 < j \leq l} \gamma_j \gamma_l A_{jl}], \quad (4.5.13)$$

$$h_1 = \sum_{\mu=0,1, \gamma=0,1,2} \left(-\frac{a_{11}}{2(k_1 + q_1)}\right)^\mu \prod_{j=2}^N \left[-\frac{a_{j1}^2}{4(k_j + q_j)^2}\right]^{\frac{\gamma_j(\gamma_j-1)}{2}} \left[\frac{1}{2}a_{j1}(\partial_{q_j} + \partial_{k_j}) + a_{j0}\right]^{\gamma_j(2-\gamma_j)} \\ \exp[\eta_1 + \mu(\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1) + \sum_{j=2}^N [\gamma_j(\tilde{\xi}_j + \tilde{\eta}_j) + \gamma_j C_{j1} + \mu\gamma_j A_{j1}] + \sum_{2 \leq j < l} \gamma_j \gamma_l A_{jl}], \quad (4.5.14)$$

$$f = e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} \left\{ 1 + \sum_{\mu=1,2} \prod_{j=2}^N \left[-\frac{a_{j1}^2}{4(k_j + q_j)^2}\right]^{\frac{\mu_j(\mu_j-1)}{2}} \left[\frac{1}{2}a_{j1}(\partial_{k_j} + \partial_{q_j}) + a_{j0}\right]^{\mu_j(2-\mu_j)} \exp\left[\sum_{j=2}^N \mu_j(\tilde{\xi}_j + \tilde{\eta}_j) + \sum_{j=2}^N \mu_j A_{j1} + \sum_{2 \leq j < l} \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl}\right] \right\}$$

$$c_{21} = c_{22} = -\frac{a_{21}^2(k_1 - k_2)^2(q_1 - q_2)^2}{4(k_2 + q_1)^2(k_1 + q_2)^2(k_2 + q_2)^2}, \quad (4.5.10e)$$

$$c_{23} = -\frac{a_{11}a_{21}^2(k_1 - k_2)(q_1 - q_2)[k_1^2 + k_2(q_1 - 2q_2) + q_1(q_1 - q_2) + k_1(-k_2 + q_2)]}{4(k_2 + q_1)^3(k_1 + q_2)^3(k_2 + q_2)}, \quad (4.5.10f)$$

$$c_{24} = -\frac{a_{11}^2(k_1 - k_2)^2(q_1 - q_2)^2}{4(k_1 + q_1)^2(k_2 + q_1)^2(k_1 + q_2)^2}, \quad (4.5.10g)$$

$$c_{25} = \frac{a_{11}^2a_{21}(k_1 - k_2)(q_1 - q_2)(k_1k_2 - k_2^2 + 2k_1q_1 - k_2q_1 - k_1q_2 + q_1q_2 - q_2^2)}{4(k_1 + q_1)(k_2 + q_1)^3(k_1 + q_2)^3}. \quad (4.5.10h)$$

$$c_{26} = \frac{a_{11}a_{21}^2(k_1 - k_2)^4(q_1 - q_2)^2}{8(k_1 + q_1)(k_2 + q_1)^2(k_1 + q_2)^4(k_2 + q_2)^2}, \quad (4.5.11a)$$

$$c_{27} = \frac{a_{11}a_{21}^2(k_1 - k_2)^2(q_1 - q_2)^4}{8(k_1 + q_1)(k_2 + q_1)^4(k_1 + q_2)^2(k_2 + q_2)^2}, \quad (4.5.11b)$$

$$c_{28} = \frac{a_{11}^2a_{21}^2(k_1 - k_2)^4(q_1 - q_2)^4}{16(k_1 + q_1)^2(k_2 + q_1)^4(k_1 + q_2)^4(k_2 + q_2)^2}, \quad (4.5.11c)$$

一般地, 若取 $g_1^{(1)}, h_1^{(1)}$ 为 (4.5.1a.b)

$$f^{(1)} = e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + \sum_{j=1}^N e^{\tilde{\xi}_j + \tilde{\eta}_j} m_j, \quad (4.5.12a)$$

$$\tilde{\xi}_j = k_j x + k_j^2 y - 4k_j^3 t + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad \tilde{\eta}_j = q_j x - q_j^2 y - 4q_j^3 t + \tilde{\eta}_j^{(0)}, \quad (4.5.12b)$$

$$m_j = a_{j1}x + a_{j1}(k_j - q_j)y + a_{j1}(-6k_j^2 - 6q_j^2)t + a_{j0}, \quad (4.5.12c)$$

我们有

$$g_1 = \sum_{\mu=0,1,\gamma=0,1,2} \left(-\frac{a_{11}}{2(k_1 + q_1)} \right)^\mu \prod_{j=2}^N \left[-\frac{a_{j1}^2}{4(k_j + q_j)^2} \right]^{\frac{\gamma_j(\gamma_j-1)}{2}} \left[\frac{1}{2}a_{j1}(\partial_{q_j} + \partial_{k_j}) + a_{j0} \right]^{\gamma_j(2-\gamma_j)} \exp[\xi_1 + \mu(\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1) + \sum_{j=2}^N [\gamma_j(\tilde{\xi}_j + \tilde{\eta}_j) + \gamma_j B_{j1} + \mu\gamma_j A_{j1}] + \sum_{2 < j < l}^N \gamma_j \gamma_l A_{jl}], \quad (4.5.13)$$

$$h_1 = \sum_{\mu=0,1,\gamma=0,1,2} \left(-\frac{a_{11}}{2(k_1 + q_1)} \right)^\mu \prod_{j=2}^N \left[-\frac{a_{j1}^2}{4(k_j + q_j)^2} \right]^{\frac{\gamma_j(\gamma_j-1)}{2}} \left[\frac{1}{2}a_{j1}(\partial_{q_j} + \partial_{k_j}) + a_{j0} \right]^{\gamma_j(2-\gamma_j)} \exp[\eta_1 + \mu(\tilde{\xi}_1 + \tilde{\eta}_1) + \sum_{j=2}^N [\gamma_j(\tilde{\xi}_j + \tilde{\eta}_j) + \gamma_j C_{j1} + \mu\gamma_j A_{j1}] + \sum_{2 < j < l}^N \gamma_j \gamma_l A_{jl}], \quad (4.5.14)$$

$$f = e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} \left\{ 1 + \sum_{\mu=1,2} \prod_{j=2}^N \left[-\frac{a_{j1}^2}{4(k_j + q_j)^2} \right]^{\frac{\mu_j(\mu_j-1)}{2}} \left[\frac{1}{2}a_{j1}(\partial_{k_j} + \partial_{q_j}) + a_{j0} \right]^{\mu_j(2-\mu_j)} \exp \left[\sum_{j=2}^N \mu_j(\tilde{\xi}_j + \tilde{\eta}_j) + \sum_{j=2}^N \mu_j A_{j1} + \sum_{2 \leq j < l}^N \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl} \right] \right\}$$

第五章 非等谱方程及其解

Hirota 方法, Bäcklund 变换和 Wronskian 技巧已经广泛的被应用来求等谱方程的多孤子解. 本章要推广这些方法到非等谱方程. 我们将以非等谱 KP 和 KdV 方程为典型的例子, 但所阐述的思想与获得的结果可类推到其他非等谱方程.

5.1 非等谱 KP 方程

等谱和非等谱 KP 方程可从联系拟微分算子的线性问题依谱参数随时间的不同变化规律逐一导出.

设

$$L = \partial + u_2 \partial^{-1} + \cdots + u_j \partial^{-(j-1)} + \cdots \quad (5.1.1)$$

为一拟微分算子, 其中 $u_j (j \geq 2)$ 是无穷多个变量 $(t, x, y) = (t_1, t_2, \cdots, t_l, \cdots, x, y)$ 的可微函数, 且这些函数及其各阶导数在无穷远处充分快趋于零. 考察由算子 L 所构成的谱问题及本征函数随时间 t_m 的发展式

$$L\phi(t, x, y) = \eta\phi(t, x, y), \quad (5.1.2a)$$

$$\phi_{t_m}(t, x, y) = A_m\phi(t, x, y), \quad (5.1.2b)$$

式中 A_m 是微分算子 ∂ 的 m 次多项式

$$A_m = a_0 \partial^m + a_1 \partial^{m-1} + \cdots + a_m, \quad (5.1.3)$$

$a_l (0 \leq l \leq m)$ 是 $u_j (j \geq 2)$ 及其导数的待定函数. 如果谱参数 η 与 t_m 无关, 则 A_m 必满足等谱 Lax 方程

$$L_{t_m} = [A_m, L], \quad (5.1.4a)$$

为使 A_m 唯一被确定, 我们取边值条件

$$A_m|_{u=0} = \partial^m. \quad (5.1.4b)$$

如果谱参数 η 按 t_n 的变化规律 $\eta_{t_n} = \frac{1}{2}\eta^{n-1}$ 发展, 则有非等谱的 Lax 方程

$$L_{t_n} = [A_n, L] + \frac{1}{2}L^{n-1}, \quad (5.1.5a)$$

并约定边值条件为

$$A_n|_{u=0} = y\partial^n + \frac{1}{2}x\partial^{n-1} + \frac{n-1}{4}\partial^{n-2}. \quad (5.1.5b)$$

由等谱 Lax 方程 (5.1.4a) 和边值条件 (5.1.4b) 即可导出等谱 KP 方程族. 而非等谱的 Lax 方程 (5.1.5a) 及条件 (5.1.5b) 可导出非等谱的 KP 方程族. 事实上, 将具有 $a_0 = y$ 的算子多项式 (5.1.3) 代入 (5.1.5) 并比较 ∂ 的同次幂系数得

$$A_1 = y\partial + \frac{1}{2}x, \quad (5.1.6a)$$

$$A_2 = y(\partial^2 + 2u_2) + \frac{1}{2}x\partial + \frac{1}{4}, \quad (5.1.6b)$$

$$A_3 = y(\partial^3 + 3u_2\partial + 3u_3 + 3u_{2,x}) + \frac{1}{2}x(\partial^2 + 2u_2) + \frac{1}{2}\partial + \frac{1}{2}(\partial^{-1}u_2), \quad (5.1.6c)$$

$$A_4 = y[\partial^4 + 4u_2\partial^2 + (4u_3 + 6u_{2,x})\partial + 4u_4 + 6u_{3,x} + 4u_{2,xx} + 6u_2^2] \\ + \frac{1}{2}x(\partial^3 + 3u_2\partial + 3u_3 + 3u_{2,x}) + \frac{3}{4}(\partial^2 + 2u_2) \\ + \frac{1}{2}(\partial^{-1}u_2)\partial + (\partial^{-1}u_3), \quad (5.1.6d)$$

.....

而坐标 u_j 满足关系式

$$u_{2,t_1} = yu_{2,x}, \quad (5.1.7a)$$

$$u_{j,t_1} = yu_{j,x} + \frac{j-2}{2}u_{j-1} \quad (j = 3, 4, \dots), \quad (5.1.7b)$$

$$u_{2,t_2} = y(2u_{3,x} + u_{2,xx}) + \frac{1}{2}xu_{2,x} + u_2, \quad (5.1.8a)$$

$$u_{3,t_2} = y(2u_{4,x} + u_{3,xx} + 2u_2u_{2,x}) + \frac{1}{2}xu_{3,x} + \frac{3}{2}u_3, \quad (5.1.8b)$$

$$u_{4,t_2} = y(2u_{5,x} + u_{4,xx} + 4u_{2,x}u_3 - 2u_2u_{2,xx}) + \frac{1}{2}xu_{4,x} + 2u_4, \quad (5.1.8c)$$

.....

$$u_{2,t_3} = y(3u_{4,x} + 3u_{3,xx} + u_{2,xxx} + 6u_2u_{2,x}) + \frac{1}{2}xh_{22} + 2u_3 + u_{2,x}, \quad (5.1.9a)$$

$$u_{3,t_3} = y[3u_{5,x} + 3u_{4,xx} + u_{3,xxx} + 6(u_2u_3)_x] + \frac{1}{2}xh_{23} + \frac{5}{2}u_4 + u_{3,x} + 2u_2^2, \quad (5.1.9b)$$

.....

$$u_{2,t_4} = yh_{42} + \frac{1}{2}xh_{32} + 3u_4 + 3u_{3,x} + \frac{5}{4}u_{2,xx} + \frac{7}{2}u_2^2 + \frac{1}{2}u_{2,x}\partial^{-1}u_2, \quad (5.1.10)$$

.....

由 $L_y = [\partial^2 + 2u_2, L]$ 可见坐标 $u_j (j \geq 3, 4, \dots)$ 可用 u_2 表示为

$$u_3 = \frac{1}{2}(\partial^{-1}u_{2,y} - u_{2,x}), \quad (5.1.11a)$$

$$u_4 = \frac{1}{4}(\partial^{-2}u_{2,yy} - 2u_{2,y} + u_{2,xx} - 2u_2^2), \quad (5.1.11b)$$

$$u_5 = \frac{1}{8}(\partial^{-3}u_{2,yyy} - 3\partial^{-1}u_{2,yy} + 3u_{2,xy} - u_{2,xxx} \\ + 12u_2u_{2,x} - 8u_2\partial^{-1}u_{2,y} + 4\partial^{-1}u_2u_{2,y}), \quad (5.1.11c)$$

.....

将 (5.1.11) 代入 (5.1.8a), (5.1.9a) 与 (5.1.10), 则有 ($u = u_2$)

$$u_{t_2} = \sigma_2 = yu_y + \frac{1}{2}xu_x + u, \quad (5.1.12)$$

$$u_{t_3} = \sigma_3 = y\left(\frac{1}{4}u_{xxx} + 3uu_x + \frac{3}{4}\partial^{-1}u_{yy}\right) + \frac{1}{2}xu_y + \partial^{-1}u_y, \quad (5.1.13)$$

$$\begin{aligned} u_{t_4} = \sigma_4 = & y\left(\frac{1}{2}u_{xxy} + 4uu_y + 2u_x\partial^{-1}u_y + \frac{1}{2}\partial^{-2}u_{yyy}\right) \\ & + \frac{1}{2}x\left(\frac{1}{4}u_{xxx} + 3uu_x + \frac{3}{4}\partial^{-1}u_{yy}\right) \\ & + \frac{1}{2}u_{xx} + 2u^2 + \frac{1}{2}u_x\partial^{-1}u + \frac{3}{4}\partial^{-2}u_{yy}, \end{aligned} \quad (5.1.14)$$

……,

这些方程与 (5.1.7a) 构成非等谱 KP 方程族, 族中右端的和式称为 KP 非等谱流, 并以 σ_n 表示. 在 (5.1.13) 中以 $\frac{1}{2}(-t, x, \frac{1}{2}y)$ 代 (t, x, y) 和 $2u$ 代 u 后就得到非等谱 KP 方程

$$4u_t + y(u_{xxx} + 6uu_x + 3\partial^{-1}u_{yy}) + 2xu_y + 4\partial^{-1}u_y = 0. \quad (5.1.15)$$

因为 Lax 方程 (5.1.5a) 等价于零曲率方程

$$A_{m,t_n} - A_{n,t_m} = [A_n, A_m], \quad (5.1.16)$$

所以非等谱 KP 方程族亦可在 (5.1.16) 中令 $n = 2, t_2 = y$ 算得. 于是推知非等谱 KP 方程族的谱问题和时间发展式应为

$$\phi_y = \phi_{xx} + 2u\phi, \quad (5.1.17a)$$

$$\phi_{t_m} = A_m\phi. \quad (5.1.17b)$$

特别非等谱 KP 方程 (5.1.15) 的时间发展式为

$$\phi_t = y[\phi_{xxx} + 3u\phi_x + \frac{3}{2}(\partial^{-1}u_y + u_x)\phi] + \frac{1}{2}x(\phi_{xx} + 2u\phi) + \frac{1}{2}\phi_x + \frac{1}{2}(\partial^{-1}u)\phi. \quad (5.1.18)$$

5.2 非等谱 KP 方程 Hirota 形式的解

我们首先必须引入一个函数变换使非等谱 KP 方程成为双线性导数方程, 然后利用扰动展开与截断技术, 类似于 Hirota 方法对等谱 KP 方程的求解过程, 即可得到非等谱 KP 方程的解.

在方程 (5.1.15) 中对 x 积分, 并令常数项为零, 则有

$$4\partial^{-1}u_t + y(u_{xx} + 3u^2 + 3\partial^{-2}u_{yy}) + 2x\partial^{-1}u_y + 2\partial^{-2}u_y = 0. \quad (5.2.1)$$

作变换

$$u = 2(\ln f)_{xx}, \quad (5.2.2)$$

方程 (5.2.1) 就可以写成下面的双线性形式

$$4D_x D_t f \cdot f + y(D_x^4 f \cdot f + 3D_y^2 f \cdot f) + 2xD_x D_y f \cdot f + 4f_y f = 0, \quad (5.2.3)$$

设 f 可按参数 ϵ 展成级数

$$f(x, y, t) = 1 + f^{(1)}\epsilon + f^{(2)}\epsilon^2 + f^{(3)}\epsilon^3 + \dots \quad (5.2.4)$$

把展开式代入 (5.2.3) 中并令 ϵ 的同次幂系数相等给出

$$4f_{xt}^{(1)} + y(f_{xxxx}^{(1)} + 3f_{yy}^{(1)}) + 2xf_{xy}^{(1)} + 2f_y^{(1)} = 0, \quad (5.2.5a)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & 8f_{xt}^{(2)} + y(2f_{xxxx}^{(2)} + 6f_{yy}^{(2)}) + 4xf_{xy}^{(2)} + 4f_y^{(2)} \\ &= -4D_x D_t f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)} - y(D_x^4 f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)} + 3D_y^2 f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)}) - 2xD_x D_y f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)} - 4f_y^{(1)} f^{(1)}, \quad (5.2.5b) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & 4f_{xt}^{(3)} + y(f_{xxxx}^{(3)} + 3f_{yy}^{(3)}) + 2xf_{xy}^{(3)} + 2f_y^{(3)} + 4D_x D_t f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} \\ &+ y(D_x^4 f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} + 3D_y^2 f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)}) + 2xD_x D_y f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} + 2(f_y^{(1)} f^{(2)} + f_y^{(2)} f^{(1)}) = 0, \quad (5.2.5c) \end{aligned}$$

.....

若取

$$f^{(1)} = e^{\theta_1}, \quad \theta_1 = K_1(t)[x + P_1(t)y] + \theta_1^{(0)}, \quad (5.2.6a)$$

由 (5.2.5) 可得

$$K_{1,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}K_1(t)P_1(t), \quad P_{1,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{4}K_1^2(t) - \frac{1}{4}P_1^2(t), \quad (5.2.6b, c)$$

和

$$f^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 2, 3, \dots \quad (5.2.6d)$$

由 (5.2.6b,c) 解出

$$K_1(t) + P_1(t) = \frac{4}{c+t}, \quad (5.2.7a)$$

以 $K_1(t)$ 表示 $P_1(t)$, 并代入 (5.2.6b) 得

$$K_{1,t}(t) = \frac{1}{2}K_1^2(t) - \frac{2K_1(t)}{c+t}, \quad (5.2.7b)$$

两端同时除以 $K_1^2(t)$, 则有

$$\left[\frac{1}{K_1(t)}\right]_t - \frac{2}{(c+t)K_1(t)} = -\frac{1}{2}, \quad (5.2.7c)$$

从而解出

$$K_1(t) = \frac{2}{2\check{c}(c+t)^2 + (c+t)}. \quad (5.2.7d)$$

为方便计, 取 $c = 2c_1, \bar{c} = -\frac{1}{8c_1}$, 所以有

$$K_1(t) = \frac{8c_1}{4c_1^2 - t^2}. \quad (5.2.8a)$$

把 $K_1(t)$ 的表达式代入 (5.2.7b), 则

$$P_1(t) = \frac{-4t}{4c_1^2 - t^2}. \quad (5.2.8b)$$

因此非等谱 KP 方程的单孤子解为

$$u = 2[\ln(1 + e^{\theta_1})]_{xx} = \frac{K_1^2(t)}{2} \operatorname{sech}^2 \frac{\theta_1}{2}. \quad (5.2.9)$$

由上式和单孤子解的图形 Fig4, 我们可以看出它是线孤子并且孤子的振幅 $\frac{K_1^2(t)}{2}$ 是随时间而变化的.

类似于单孤子解, 如果取

$$f^{(1)} = e^{\theta_1} + e^{\theta_2}, \quad \theta_j = K_j(t)[x + P_j(t)y] + \theta_j^{(0)}, \quad (j = 1, 2), \quad (5.2.10a)$$

通过 (5.2.5) 算得

$$f^{(2)} = e^{\theta_1 + \theta_2 + A_{12}}, \quad (5.2.10b)$$

$$K_{j,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}K_j(t)P_j(t), \quad P_{j,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{4}K_j^2(t) - \frac{1}{4}P_j^2(t),$$

$$K_j(t) = \frac{8c_j}{4c_j^2 - t^2}, \quad P_j(t) = \frac{-4t}{4c_j^2 - t^2}, \quad (j = 1, 2) \quad (5.2.10c)$$

$$e^{A_{12}} = \frac{[K_2(t) - K_1(t)]^2 - [P_2(t) - P_1(t)]^2}{[K_2(t) + K_1(t)]^2 - [P_2(t) + P_1(t)]^2}, \quad (5.2.10d)$$

和

$$f^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 3, 4, \dots \quad (5.2.10e)$$

所以非等谱 KP 方程的双孤子解为

$$u = 2[\ln(1 + e^{\theta_1} + e^{\theta_2} + e^{\theta_1 + \theta_2 + A_{12}})]_{xx}. \quad (5.2.11)$$

图形 Fig5 显示了双孤子的相互作用.

同理如果取

$$f = e^{\theta_1} + e^{\theta_2} + e^{\theta_3}, \quad \theta_j = K_j(t)[x + P_j(t)y] + \theta_j^{(0)}, \quad (j = 1, 2, 3), \quad (5.2.12)$$

则得三孤子解为

$$u = 2 \ln[1 + e^{\theta_1} + e^{\theta_2} + e^{\theta_3} + e^{\theta_1 + \theta_2 + A_{12}} + e^{\theta_2 + \theta_3 + A_{23}} + e^{\theta_1 + \theta_3 + A_{13}}$$

$$+e^{\theta_1+\theta_2+\theta_3+A_{12}+A_{13}+A_{23}}]_{xx}, \quad (5.2.13a)$$

$$\theta_j = K_j(t)[x + P_j(t)y] + \theta_j^{(0)}, \quad K_{j,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}K_j(t)P_j(t), \quad P_{j,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{4}K_j^2(t) - \frac{1}{4}P_j^2(t),$$

$$K_j(t) = \frac{8c_j}{4c_j^2 - t^2}, \quad P_j(t) = \frac{-4t}{4c_j^2 - t^2}, \quad (j = 1, 2, 3), \quad (5.2.13b)$$

$$e^{A_{jl}} = \frac{[K_j(t) - K_l(t)]^2 - [P_j(t) - P_l(t)]^2}{[K_j(t) + K_l(t)]^2 - [P_j(t) - P_l(t)]^2}, \quad (j < l, j, l = 1, 2, 3). \quad (5.2.13c)$$

这样的求解过程可以一直继续下去, 一般若取

$$f^{(1)} = \sum_{j=1}^N e^{\theta_j}, \quad \theta_j = K_j(t)[x + P_j(t)y] + \theta_j^{(0)}, \quad (5.2.14a)$$

则可获得非等谱 KP 方程的 N 孤子解, 它可以表示为

$$u = 2 \ln \left\{ \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \exp \left[\sum_{j=1}^N \epsilon_j \theta_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl} \right] \right\}_{xx}, \quad (5.2.14b)$$

$$K_{j,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}K_j(t)P_j(t), \quad P_{j,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{4}K_j^2(t) - \frac{1}{4}P_j^2(t),$$

$$K_j(t) = \frac{8c_j}{4c_j^2 - t^2}, \quad P_j(t) = \frac{-4t}{4c_j^2 - t^2}, \quad (5.2.14c)$$

$$e^{A_{jl}} = \frac{[K_l(t) - K_j(t)]^2 - [P_l(t) - P_j(t)]^2}{[K_l(t) + K_j(t)]^2 - [P_l(t) - P_j(t)]^2}, \quad (5.2.14d)$$

其中对 ϵ 的求和应取过 $\epsilon_j = 0, 1$ ($j = 1, 2, \dots, N$) 的所有一切可能的组合.

容易看出非等谱 KP 方程的解也可写成另一种等价形式. 即取

$$f^{(1)} = \sum_{j=1}^N \exp(\xi_j + \eta_j), \quad (5.2.15a)$$

$$\xi_j = k_j(t)x + k_j^2(t)y + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad \eta_j = q_j(t)x - q_j^2(t)y + \eta_j^{(0)}, \quad (5.2.15b)$$

从 (5.2.5), 不难算得单孤子解 ($N = 1$) 和双孤子解 ($N = 2$) 的表达式分别为

$$u = 2[\ln(1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1})]_{xx}, \quad (5.2.16a)$$

$$k_{1,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}k_1^2(t), \quad q_{1,t}(t) = \frac{1}{2}q_1^2(t), \quad k_1(t) = \frac{2}{2c_1 + t}, \quad q_1(t) = \frac{2}{2c_1 - t}, \quad (5.2.16b)$$

和

$$u = 2[\ln(1 + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1} + e^{\xi_2 + \eta_2} + e^{\xi_1 + \eta_1 + \xi_2 + \eta_2 + A'_{12}})]_{xx},$$

$$e^{A'_{12}} = \frac{[k_1(t) - k_2(t)][q_1(t) - q_2(t)]}{[k_1(t) + q_2(t)][k_2(t) + q_1(t)]}. \quad (5.2.16c)$$

$$k_{j,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}k_j^2(t), \quad q_{j,t}(t) = \frac{1}{2}q_j^2(t), \quad k_j(t) = \frac{2}{2c_j + t}, \quad q_j(t) = \frac{2}{2c_j - t}, \quad (j = 1, 2). \quad (5.2.16d)$$

进而可推断非等谱 KP 方程的 N 孤子解, 其中 f 的表达式为

$$f = \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N \epsilon_j(\xi_j + \eta_j) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A'_{jl}\right], \quad (5.2.17a)$$

$$k_{j,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}k_j^2(t), \quad q_{j,t}(t) = \frac{1}{2}q_j^2(t), \quad k_j(t) = \frac{2}{2c_j + t}, \quad q_j(t) = \frac{2}{2c_j - t}. \quad (5.2.17b)$$

$$e^{A'_{jl}} = \frac{[k_l(t) - k_j(t)][q_l(t) - q_j(t)]}{[k_l(t) + q_j(t)][k_j(t) + q_l(t)]}. \quad (5.2.17c)$$

5.3 非等谱 KP 方程的 Wronskian 形式的解

非等谱 KP 方程相应的双线性方程 (5.2.3) 存在 Wronskian 行列式解, 其形式为

$$f = W(\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_N) = |0, 1, \dots, N-1| = |\widehat{N-1}|, \quad (5.3.1)$$

其中 $\phi_j = \phi_j(t, x, y,) (j = 1, 2, \dots, N)$ 满足方程

$$\phi_{j,y} = \phi_{j,xx}, \quad (5.3.2a)$$

$$\phi_{j,t} = -y\phi_{j,xxx} - \frac{1}{2}x\phi_{j,xx} + \frac{1}{2}(N-1)\phi_{j,x}, \quad (5.3.2b)$$

其中 N 是正整数, 事实上对于等谱 KP 方程 (3.2.1) 具有 Wronskian 形式的解 (5.3.1), 其中 ϕ_j 满足 (3.2.2). 下面验证 Wronskian 行列式 (5.3.1) 满足双线性方程 (5.2.3). 由 (5.3.1) 不难算出

$$f_x = |\widehat{N-2}, N|, \quad f_{xx} = |\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+1|, \quad (5.3.3a)$$

$$f_{xxx} = |\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, N| + 2|\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N+1| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+2|, \quad (5.3.3b)$$

$$\begin{aligned} f_{xxxx} = & |\widehat{N-5}, N-3, N-2, N-1, N| + 3|\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, N+1| \\ & + 2|\widehat{N-3}, N, N+1| + 3|\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N+2| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+3|, \end{aligned} \quad (5.3.3c)$$

由 (5.3.2) 式可以分别求得关于 y, yy, yx 和 t, tx 的导数

$$f_y = -|\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+1|, \quad (5.3.4a)$$

$$\begin{aligned} f_{yy} = & |\widehat{N-5}, N-3, N-2, N-1, N| - |\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, N+1| \\ & + 2|\widehat{N-3}, N, N+1| - |\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N+2| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+3|, \end{aligned} \quad (5.3.4b)$$

$$f_{yx} = -|\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, N| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+2|, \quad (5.3.4c)$$

$$f_t = -y(|\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, N| - |\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N+1| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+2|)$$

$$-\frac{1}{2}x \left(-|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+1}| \right), \quad (5.3.5a)$$

$$\begin{aligned} f_{tx} = & -y(|\widehat{N-5, N-3, N-2, N-1, N}| - |\widehat{N-3, N, N+1}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+3}|) \\ & -\frac{x}{2}(-|\widehat{N-4, N-2, N-1, N}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+2}|) \\ & -\frac{1}{2}(-|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+1}|), \end{aligned} \quad (5.3.5b)$$

把 (5.3.3-5) 代入 (5.2.3) 的左端

$$\begin{aligned} & 8(f_{tx}f - f_x f_t) + 2y(ff_{xxxx} - 4f_{xxx}f_x + 3f_{xx}^2 + 3ff_{yy} - 3f_y^2) + 4x(f_{yx}f - f_x f_y) + 4f_y f \\ & = 24y|\widehat{N-3, N, N+1}||\widehat{N-1}| - 24y|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N+1}||\widehat{N-2, N}| \\ & + 24y|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N}||\widehat{N-2, N+1}| = 0, \end{aligned} \quad (5.3.6)$$

至此完成解的直接验证.

若取 Wronskian 行列式 (5.3.1) 中的元素 ϕ_j 为

$$\phi_j = \alpha_j^+ A_j(t)e^{\xi_j} + \alpha_j^- B_j(t)e^{-\eta_j}, \quad (j = 1, 2, \dots, N) \quad (5.3.7a)$$

$$A_j(t) = (2c_j + t)^{N-1}, \quad B_j(t) = (2c_j - t)^{N-1}. \quad (5.3.7b)$$

当 $\alpha_j^+ = 1$ 和 $\alpha_j^- = (-1)^{j-1}$ 时, Wronskian 行列式 (5.3.1) 可以写成

$$f = \prod_{1 \leq j < l} [q_l(t) - q_j(t)] \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N (-\eta_j - \ln B_j(t))\right] \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N \epsilon_j \theta'_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A'_{jl}\right], \quad (5.3.8a)$$

$$\theta'_j = \xi'_j + \eta'_j, \quad \xi'_j = \xi_j + \ln A_j(t) + \sum_{j \neq l} [k_j(t) + q_l(t)], \quad (5.3.8b)$$

$$\eta'_j = \eta_j + \ln B_j(t) + \sum_{j > l} [q_j(t) - q_l(t)]^{-1} + \sum_{l > j} [q_l(t) - q_j(t)]^{-1}, \quad (5.3.8c)$$

等式 (5.3.8a) 中的每一 θ'_j 都存在与时间 t 有关的初始相位, 所以从等式 (5.3.8) 和 (5.2.12) 按 (5.2.2) 构成非等谱 KP 方程的解时是不同的.

非等谱 KP 方程还存在构成其他形式的 Wronskian 行列式的解.

令

$$Q_{j,l} = \frac{\partial^l}{\partial c_j^l} \phi_j, \quad j = 1, 2, \dots, N, \quad l = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \quad (5.3.9)$$

则容易发现 (5.3.9) 也满足方程 (5.3.2). 因此 Wronskian 行列式

$$f = W(Q_{j_1, l_1}, Q_{j_2, l_2}, \dots, Q_{j_N, l_N}), \quad (5.3.10)$$

也是双线性方程 (5.2.3) 的解.

一般称 (5.3.10) 这种形式的解为混和解. 在等式 (5.3.7) 中, 取 $\alpha_j^+ = 1$ 和 $\alpha_j^- = 0$, (5.3.10) 化为非等谱 KP 方程有理形式的 Wronskian 行列式解. 下面列举几个特例:

$$f = W(Q_{1,1}) = [-k_1^2(t)x - 2k_1^3(t)y]e^{\xi_1}, \quad (5.3.11a)$$

$$\begin{aligned} f &= W(Q_{1,0}, Q_{2,1}) \\ &= 2\{-k_1(t) + xk_2(t)[k_1(t) - k_2(t)] + 2yk_2^2(t)[k_1(t) - k_2(t)]\}e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2}, \end{aligned} \quad (5.3.11b)$$

$$\begin{aligned} f &= W(Q_{1,1}, Q_{2,1}) \\ &= -4[k_1(t) - k_2(t)]\{-[k_1(t) + k_2(t)]x - 2[k_1^2(t) + k_1(t)k_2(t) + k_2^2(t)]y \\ &\quad + k_1(t)k_2(t)x^2 + 4k_1^2(t)k_2^2(t)y^2 + 2k_1(t)k_2(t)[k_1(t) + k_2(t)]xy\}e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2}. \end{aligned} \quad (5.3.11c)$$

Ohta 等人在文献中由解出发推导出相应的可积方程并称此过程为 Pfaffian 化. 仿此, 如果 (5.3.1) 的元素满足 (5.3.2a) 和

$$\phi_{j,t} = -y\phi_{j,xxx} - \frac{1}{2}x\phi_{j,xx}. \quad (5.3.12)$$

则具有此 Wronskain 行列式解的是下列双线性方程

$$4D_x D_t f \cdot f + y(D_x^4 f \cdot f + 3D_y^2 f \cdot f) + 2xD_x D_y f \cdot f + 4f_y f + 2(N-1)D_x^2 f \cdot f = 0, \quad (5.3.13)$$

通过变换 (5.2.2), 即化为

$$4u_t + y(u_{xxx} + 6uu_x + 3\partial^{-1}u_{yy}) + 2xu_y + 4\partial^{-1}u_y + 2(N-1)u = 0. \quad (5.3.14)$$

5.4 非等谱 KP 方程的 Bäcklund 变换

非等谱 KP 方程也存在双线性导数 Bäcklund 变换. 在谱问题 (5.1.17a) 与时间发展式 (5.1.18) 中以 $\frac{1}{2}(-t, x, \frac{1}{2}y)$ 代 (t, x, y) 和 $2u$ 代 u 后, (5.1.17a) 保持不变, 而 (5.1.18) 化为

$$4\phi_t + 2\phi_x + (\partial^{-1}u)\phi + y[4\phi_{xxx} + 6u\phi_x + 3(\partial^{-1}u_y + u_x)\phi] + \frac{x}{2}(\phi_{xx} + u\phi) = 0. \quad (5.4.1)$$

类似于等谱情形, 作变换

$$u = 2(\ln f)_{xx}, \quad \phi = \frac{g}{f}, \quad (5.4.2)$$

则 (5.1.17a) 与 (5.4.1) 可写成

$$D_y g \cdot f = D_x^2 g \cdot f, \quad (5.4.3a)$$

$$4D_t g \cdot f + y(D_x^3 g \cdot f + 3D_x D_y g \cdot f) + 2xD_x^2 g \cdot f + 2fg_x = 0. \quad (5.4.3b)$$

f 与 g 所满足的方程 (5.4.3) 即为非等谱 KP 方程的双线性导数 Bäcklund 变换.

在等谱方程 Bäcklund 变换的求解过程中,一般是由方程的已知解求出新解,再以所得的解作为已知解,求出更新解,周而复始.但是在非等谱 KP 方程的情形,我们发现这种规则是不成立的.例如:取 $f = 1$, 其对应非等谱 KP 方程的零解,此时 (5.4.3) 变为

$$g_y = g_{xx}, \quad (5.4.4a)$$

$$4g_t + y(g_{xxx} + 3g_{xy}) + 2xg_{xx} + 2g_x = 0. \quad (5.4.4b)$$

若设

$$g = \alpha_1(t)e^{\xi_1} + \beta_1(t)e^{-\eta_1}, \quad (5.4.5)$$

其中 ξ_1, η_1 的表达式为 (5.2.15b). 由 (5.4.4) 得

$$k_{1,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}k_1^2(t), \quad q_{1,t}(t) = \frac{1}{2}q_1^2(t), \quad \alpha_{1,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}k_1(t)\alpha_1(t), \quad \beta_{1,t}(t) = \frac{1}{2}q_1(t)\beta_1(t), \quad (5.4.6a)$$

由此解出

$$k_1(t) = \frac{2}{2c_1 + t}, \quad q_1(t) = \frac{2}{2c_1 - t}, \quad \alpha_1(t) = \frac{1}{2c_1 + t}, \quad \beta_1(t) = \frac{1}{2c_1 - t}. \quad (5.4.6b)$$

可见非等谱 KP 方程的单孤子解为

$$u = 2[\ln(\alpha_1(t)e^{\xi_1} + \beta_1(t)e^{-\eta_1})]_{xx}. \quad (5.4.7)$$

如果取 f 为 (5.4.5) 并代入 (5.4.3) 算得 g 为 0. 显然它不对应方程的任何解. 但是如果取

$$f = e^{\xi_1} + e^{-\eta_1}, \quad (5.4.8a)$$

$$g = c_1(t)e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} + c_2(t)e^{-\eta_1 - \eta_2} + c_3(t)e^{\xi_1 - \eta_2} + c_4(t)e^{-\eta_1 + \xi_2}, \quad (5.4.8b)$$

代入 (5.4.3) 有

$$c_1(t) = [k_1(t) - k_2(t)], \quad c_2(t) = [q_1(t) - q_2(t)],$$

$$c_3(t) = -[k_1(t) + q_2(t)], \quad c_4(t) = -[k_2(t) + q_1(t)], \quad (5.4.9a)$$

$$k_{1,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}k_1^2(t), \quad k_{2,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}k_2^2(t), \quad q_{1,t}(t) = \frac{1}{2}q_1^2(t), \quad q_{2,t}(t) = \frac{1}{2}q_2^2(t), \quad (5.4.9b)$$

$$k_1(t) = \frac{2}{t + 2c_1}, \quad q_1(t) = \frac{2}{2c_1 - t}, \quad k_2(t) = \frac{2}{t + 2c_2}, \quad q_2(t) = \frac{2}{2c_2 - t}, \quad (5.4.9c)$$

从而得非等谱 KP 方程所对应的双孤子解. 如果取

$$f = c_1(t)a_1(t)a_2(t)e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} + c_2(t)b_1(t)b_2(t)e^{-\eta_1 - \eta_2} + c_3(t)a_1(t)b_2(t)e^{\xi_1 - \eta_2} + c_4(t)b_1(t)a_2(t)e^{-\eta_1 + \xi_2}, \quad (5.4.10a)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \xi_j &= k_j(t)x + k_j^2(t)y + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad \eta_j = q_j(t)x - q_j^2(t)y + \eta_j^{(0)}, \\ k_{j,t}(t) &= -\frac{1}{2}k_j^2(t), \quad q_{j,t}(t) = \frac{1}{2}q_j^2(t), \quad a_j(t) = \frac{2}{k_j(t)}, \quad b_j(t) = \frac{2}{p_j(t)}, \quad (j = 1, 2). \end{aligned} \quad (5.4.10b)$$

由 (5.4.3) 确定出

$$\begin{aligned} g &= c_5(t)a_1(t)a_2(t)a_3(t)e^{\xi_1+\xi_2+\xi_3} + c_6(t)a_1(t)a_2(t)b_3(t)e^{\xi_1+\xi_2-\eta_3} \\ &+ c_7(t)a_1(t)b_2(t)a_3(t)e^{\xi_1-\eta_2+\xi_3} + c_8(t)b_1(t)a_2(t)a_3(t)e^{-\eta_1+\xi_2+\xi_3} \\ &+ c_9(t)b_1(t)b_2(t)a_3(t)e^{-\eta_1-\eta_2+\xi_3} + c_{10}(t)b_1(t)a_2(t)b_3(t)e^{-\eta_1+\xi_2-\eta_3} \\ &+ c_{11}(t)a_1(t)b_2(t)b_3(t)e^{\xi_1-\eta_2-\eta_3} + c_{12}(t)b_1(t)b_2(t)b_3(t)e^{-\eta_1-\eta_2-\eta_3}, \end{aligned} \quad (5.4.11a)$$

$$c_5(t) = [k_1(t) - k_2(t)][k_2(t) - k_3(t)][k_1(t) - k_3(t)],$$

$$c_6(t) = [k_1(t) - k_2(t)][k_2(t) + q_3(t)][k_1(t) + q_3(t)],$$

$$c_7(t) = [k_1(t) + q_2(t)][k_3(t) + q_2(t)][k_1(t) - k_3(t)],$$

$$c_8(t) = [k_2(t) - k_3(t)][k_2(t) + q_1(t)][k_3(t) + q_1(t)],$$

$$c_9(t) = [k_3(t) + q_1(t)][k_3(t) + q_2(t)][q_1(t) - q_2(t)],$$

$$c_{10}(t) = [k_2(t) + q_1(t)][k_2(t) + q_3(t)][q_1(t) - q_3(t)],$$

$$c_{11}(t) = [k_1(t) + q_2(t)][q_2(t) - q_3(t)][k_1(t) + q_3(t)],$$

$$c_{12}(t) = [q_1(t) - q_2(t)][q_1(t) - q_3(t)][q_2(t) - q_3(t)], \quad (5.4.11b)$$

其中

$$\begin{aligned} \xi_j &= k_j(t)x + k_j^2(t)y + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad \eta_j = q_j(t)x - q_j^2(t)y + \eta_j^{(0)}, \\ k_{3,t}(t) &= -\frac{1}{2}k_3^2(t), \quad q_{3,t}(t) = \frac{1}{2}q_3^2(t), \quad a_3(t) = \frac{2}{k_3(t)}, \quad b_3(t) = \frac{2}{p_3(t)}. \end{aligned} \quad (5.4.11c)$$

由此可得非等谱 KP 方程所对应的三孤子解.

一般地, 如果取 f 的表达式为

$$\begin{aligned} f &= \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \prod_{1 \leq j < l}^{N-1} (2\epsilon_j - 1)[\epsilon_j k_j(t) + (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j(t) - \epsilon_l k_l(t) - (\epsilon_l - 1)q_l(t)] \\ &\quad \exp\left\{ \sum_{j=1}^{N-1} [\epsilon_j(\xi_j + \ln a_j(t)) + (\epsilon_j - 1)(\eta_j - \ln b_j(t))] \right\}, \end{aligned} \quad (5.4.12a)$$

其中

$$\xi_j = k_j(t)x + k_j^2(t)y + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad \eta_j = q_j(t)x - q_j^2(t)y + \eta_j^{(0)}, \quad (5.4.12b)$$

$$k_{j,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}k_j^2(t), \quad q_{j,t}(t) = \frac{1}{2}q_j^2(t), \quad a_j(t) = \left(\frac{2}{k_j(t)}\right)^{N-2}, \quad b_j(t) = \left(\frac{2}{q_j(t)}\right)^{N-2}, \quad (5.4.12c)$$

进而可猜测满足方程 (5.4.3) 的解 g 为

$$g = \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \prod_{1 \leq j < l}^N (2\epsilon_l - 1) [\epsilon_j k_j(t) + (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j(t) - \epsilon_l k_l(t) - (\epsilon_l - 1)q_l(t)] \exp\left\{\sum_{j=1}^N [\epsilon_j(\xi_j + \ln a_j(t)) + (\epsilon_j - 1)(\eta_j - \ln b_j(t))]\right\}, \quad (5.4.13a)$$

$$\xi_N = k_N(t)x + k_N^2(t)y + \xi_N^{(0)}, \quad \eta_N = q_N(t)x - q_N^2(t)y + \eta_N^{(0)}, \quad (5.4.13b)$$

$$k_{N,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}k_N^2(t), \quad q_{N,t}(t) = \frac{1}{2}q_N^2(t), \quad a_N(t) = \left(\frac{2}{k_N(t)}\right)^{N-2}, \quad b_N(t) = \left(\frac{2}{q_N(t)}\right)^{N-2}, \quad (5.4.13c)$$

再来构造非等谱 KP 方程 Bäcklund 变换 Wronskian 形式的解. 我们知道等谱 KP 方程的双线性导数 Bäcklund 变换 (5.4.3a) 和

$$D_t g \cdot f = (D_x^3 + 3D_x D_y)g \cdot f, \quad (5.4.14)$$

有 Wronskian 行列式解

$$f = |\widehat{N-2}, \tau|, \quad g = |\widehat{N-1}|, \quad (5.4.15a, b)$$

其中 ϕ_j 满足

$$\phi_{j,y} = \phi_{j,xx}, \quad \phi_{j,t} = 4\phi_{j,xxx}, \quad (5.4.15c, d)$$

对于非等谱 KP 方程的 Bäcklund 变换 (5.4.3), 其也有 Wronskain 行列式解 (5.4.15a,b), 其中 ϕ_j 满足关系式 (5.4.15c) 和

$$\phi_{j,t} = -y\phi_{j,xxx} - \frac{1}{2}x\phi_{j,xx} + \frac{1}{2}(N-2)\phi_{j,x}, \quad (5.4.16)$$

在上式的两端同时对 x 求 i 阶导数, 则有

$$\phi_{j,t}^{(i)} = -y\phi_j^{(i+3)} - \frac{1}{2}x\phi_j^{(i+2)} + \left[-\frac{1}{2}i + \frac{1}{2}(N-2)\right]\phi_j^{(i+1)}. \quad (5.4.17)$$

由 (5.4.15) 容易算出

$$f_x = |\widehat{N-3}, N-1, \tau|, \quad f_{xx} = |\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, \tau| + |\widehat{N-3}, N, \tau|, \quad (5.4.18a)$$

$$f_{xxx} = |\widehat{N-5}, N-3, N-2, N-1, \tau| + 2|\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N, \tau| + |\widehat{N-3}, N+1, \tau|, \quad (5.4.18b)$$

$$f_y = -|\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, \tau| + |\widehat{N-3}, N, \tau|, \quad (5.4.18c)$$

$$f_{yx} = -|\widehat{N-5}, N-3, N-2, N-1, \tau| + |\widehat{N-3}, N+1, \tau|, \quad (5.4.18d)$$

$$f_t = -y(|\widehat{N-5, N-3, N-2, N-1, \tau}| - |\widehat{N-4, N-2, N, \tau}| + |\widehat{N-3, N+1, \tau}|) \\ + \frac{1}{2}x|\widehat{N-4, N-2, N-1, \tau}| - \frac{1}{2}x|\widehat{N-3, N, \tau}|, \quad (5.4.18e)$$

$$g_x = |\widehat{N-2, N}|, \quad g_{xx} = |\widehat{N-3, N-1, N}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+1}|, \quad (5.4.19a)$$

$$g_{xxx} = |\widehat{N-4, N-2, N-1, N}| + 2|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N+1}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+2}|, \quad (5.4.19b)$$

$$g_y = -|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+1}|, \quad (5.4.19c)$$

$$g_{yx} = -|\widehat{N-4, N-2, N-1, N}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+2}|, \quad (5.4.19d)$$

$$g_t = -y(|\widehat{N-4, N-2, N-1, N}| - |\widehat{N-3, N-1, N+1}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+2}|) \\ + \frac{1}{2}x|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N}| - \frac{1}{2}x|\widehat{N-2, N+1}| - \frac{1}{2}|\widehat{N-2, N}|, \quad (5.4.19e)$$

把 (5.4.18-19) 代入 (5.4.3) 式

$$g_y f - g f_y - (g_{xx} f - 2f_x g_x + g f_{xx}) \\ = -2|\widehat{N-2, \tau}| |\widehat{N-3, N-1, N}| + 2|\widehat{N-3, N-1, \tau}| |\widehat{N-2, N}| \\ - 2|\widehat{N-3, N, \tau}| |\widehat{N-1}| = 0, \quad (5.4.20)$$

$$4(g_t f - g f_t) + y(g_{xxx} f - 3g_{xx} f_x + 3g_x f_{xx} - g f_{xxx} + 3g_{xy} f - 3g_x f_y - 3g_y f_x + 3g f_{xy}) \\ + 2x(g_{xx} f - 2g_x f_x + g f_{xx}) + 2f g_x \\ = 6(|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N+1}| |\widehat{N-2, \tau}| + |\widehat{N-3, N+1, \tau}| |\widehat{N-1}| \\ - |\widehat{N-2, N+1}| |\widehat{N-3, N-1, \tau}|) + 6(|\widehat{N-2, N}| |\widehat{N-4, N-2, N-1, \tau}| \\ - |\widehat{N-4, N-2, N-1, N}| |\widehat{N-2, \tau}| - |\widehat{N-4, N-2, N, \tau}| |\widehat{N-1}|) = 0, \quad (5.4.21)$$

这样我们证明所要的结论.

如果取

$$\phi_j = a_j(t)e^{\xi_j} + b_j(t)e^{-\eta_j}, \quad \xi_j = k_j(t)x + k_j^2(t)y + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad \eta_j = q_j(t)x - q_j^2(t)y + \eta_j^{(0)}, \quad (5.4.22a)$$

$$k_{j,t}(t) = -\frac{1}{2}k_j^2(t), \quad q_{j,t}(t) = \frac{1}{2}q_j^2(t), \quad a_j(t) = \left(\frac{2}{k_j(t)}\right)^{N-2}, \quad b_j(t) = \left(\frac{2}{q_j(t)}\right)^{N-2}, \quad (5.4.22b)$$

则 Wronskian 行列式 (5.4.15b) 成为

$$g = |a_j(t)e^{\xi_j} + (-1)^{j-1}b_j(t)e^{-\eta_j}, k_j(t)a_j(t)e^{\xi_j} + q_j(t)(-1)^j b_j(t)e^{-\eta_j}, \\ \dots, k_j^{N-1}(t)a_j(t)e^{\xi_j} + q_j^{N-1}(t)(-1)^{j+N}b_j(t)e^{-\eta_j}|$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} (2\epsilon_2 - 1)(2\epsilon_4 - 1) \cdots (2\epsilon_{2[\frac{N}{2}]} - 1) \Delta(\epsilon_1 k_1(t) + (\epsilon_1 - 1)q_1(t), \epsilon_2 k_2(t) + (\epsilon_2 - 1)q_2(t), \\
&\cdots, \epsilon_N k_N(t) + (\epsilon_N - 1)q_N(t)) \exp\left\{\sum_{j=1}^N [\epsilon_j(\xi_j + \ln a_j(t)) + (\epsilon_j - 1)(\eta_j - \ln b_j(t))]\right\},
\end{aligned} \tag{5.4.23}$$

其中对 ϵ 的和式表示 $\epsilon_j (j = 1, 2, \dots, n)$ 取 0 或 1 时所有可能项之和, 而行列式 $\Delta(\epsilon_1 k_1(t) + (\epsilon_1 - 1)q_1(t), \epsilon_2 k_2(t) + (\epsilon_2 - 1)q_2(t), \dots, \epsilon_N k_N(t) + (\epsilon_N - 1)q_N(t))$ 是元为 $\epsilon_1 k_1(t) + (\epsilon_1 - 1)q_1(t), \epsilon_2 k_2(t) + (\epsilon_2 - 1)q_2(t), \dots, \epsilon_N k_N(t) + (\epsilon_N - 1)q_N(t)$ 的 Vandermonde 行列式, 其值为

$$\begin{aligned}
&\Delta(\epsilon_1 k_1(t) + (\epsilon_1 - 1)q_1(t), \epsilon_2 k_2(t) + (\epsilon_2 - 1)q_2(t), \dots, \epsilon_N k_N(t) + (\epsilon_N - 1)q_N(t)) \\
&= \prod_{1 \leq j < l}^N [\epsilon_l k_l(t) + (\epsilon_l - 1)q_l(t) - \epsilon_j k_j(t) - (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j(t)],
\end{aligned} \tag{5.4.24}$$

类似于 (4.4.3-4) 的分析, 我们有

$$\begin{aligned}
&\prod_{j=1}^{[\frac{N}{2}]} (2\epsilon_j - 1) \Delta(\epsilon_1 k_1(t) + (\epsilon_1 - 1)q_1(t), \epsilon_2 k_2(t) + (\epsilon_2 - 1)q_2(t), \dots, \epsilon_N k_N(t) + (\epsilon_N - 1)q_N(t)) \\
&= (-1)^{\frac{N(N-1)}{2}} \prod_{1 \leq j < l}^N (2\epsilon_l - 1) [\epsilon_j k_j(t) + (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j(t) - \epsilon_l k_l(t) - (\epsilon_l - 1)q_l(t)],
\end{aligned} \tag{5.4.25}$$

将 (5.4.25) 代入 (5.4.23) 即得 Wronskian 行列式 (5.4.15b) 的显式

$$\begin{aligned}
g &= (-1)^{\frac{N(N-1)}{2}} \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \prod_{1 \leq j < l}^N (2\epsilon_l - 1) [\epsilon_j k_j(t) + (\epsilon_j - 1)q_j(t) - \epsilon_l k_l(t) - (\epsilon_l - 1)q_l(t)] \\
&\quad \exp\left\{\sum_{j=1}^N [\epsilon_j(\xi_j + \ln a_j(t)) + (\epsilon_j - 1)(\eta_j - \ln b_j(t))]\right\}.
\end{aligned} \tag{5.4.26}$$

比较上式与 (5.4.13), 我们可以发现两者在构成非等谱 KP 方程的多孤子解时是一致的.

5.5 非等谱 KdV 方程

分析非等谱 KP 方程的方法可以应用于其它非等谱方程, 下面再以非等谱 KdV 方程为例, 给出相应的结果.

非等谱 KdV 方程的导出与等谱情形类似. 设给定 Schrödinger 谱问题与时间发展式

$$\phi_{xx} = (\lambda - u)\phi, \quad \phi_t = A\phi + B\phi_x, \tag{5.5.1a, b}$$

其中 A 和 B 是位势 u 和谱参数 λ 的待定函数. 由相容性条件 $\phi_{xxt} = \phi_{txx}$ 给出

$$(2A_x + B_{xx})\phi_x + [u_t - \lambda_t + A_{xx} + 2(\lambda - u)B_x - u_x B]\phi = 0, \quad (5.5.2)$$

于是推知

$$2A_x + B_{xx} = 0, \quad (5.5.3a)$$

$$u_t = -A_{xx} - 2(\lambda - u)B_x + u_x B + \lambda_t. \quad (5.5.3b)$$

从 (5.5.3) 中消去 A , 我们有

$$u_t = 2\left(\frac{1}{4}\partial^3 + u\partial + \frac{1}{2}u_x\right)B - 2\lambda B_x + \lambda_t. \quad (5.5.4)$$

若 λ 按规律 $\lambda_t = \frac{1}{2}(4\lambda)^{n+1}$ 随时间 t 变化, 则 (5.5.4) 化为

$$u_t = 2\left(\frac{1}{4}\partial^3 + u\partial + \frac{1}{2}u_x\right)B - 2\lambda B_x + \frac{1}{2}(4\lambda)^{n+1}. \quad (5.5.5)$$

设 B 可按 λ 展成 n 次多项式

$$B = \sum_{j=0}^n b_j \lambda^{n-j}, \quad (5.5.6)$$

将其代入到 (5.5.5) 中, 并令 λ 的同次幂系数相等得

$$u_t = 2\left(\frac{1}{4}\partial^3 + u\partial + \frac{1}{2}u_x\right)b_n, \quad (5.5.7a)$$

$$b_{j+1,x} = \left(\frac{1}{4}\partial^3 + u\partial + \frac{1}{2}u_x\right)b_j \quad (j = 0, 1, \dots, n-1), \quad (5.5.7b)$$

$$b_{0,x} = 4^n. \quad (5.5.7c)$$

这时可设 B 满足边值条件

$$B|_{u=0} = (4\lambda)^n x. \quad (5.5.8)$$

于是由 (5.5.8) 与 (5.5.7b) 递推算得

$$b_{j,x} = 2 \cdot 4^{n-j} T^{j-1}(xu_x + 2u) \quad (j = 1, 2, \dots, n), \quad (5.5.9)$$

其中 T 为等谱 KdV 方程的递推算子

$$T = \partial^2 + 4u + 2u_x \partial^{-1}. \quad (5.5.10)$$

所以

$$b_n = 2\partial^{-1} T^{n-1}(xu_x + 2u). \quad (5.5.11)$$

将 (5.5.10) 代入 (5.5.7a) 给出

$$u_t = T^n(xu_x + 2u) \quad (n = 0, 1, 2, \dots), \quad (5.5.12)$$

这就是非等谱的 KdV 方程族, 其右端常记为 σ_n 并称为 n 阶 KdV 非等谱流, 即有

$$\sigma_n = T^n(xu_x + 2u). \quad (5.5.13)$$

相邻非等谱流存在递推关系

$$\sigma_{n+1} = T\sigma_n \quad (n = 0, 1, 2, \dots). \quad (5.5.14)$$

必须指出与等谱情形不同, 非等谱方程除零阶方程外, 其余均是微分积分方程, 它的前三个方程分别是

$$u_t = \sigma_0 = xu_x + 2u, \quad (5.5.15a)$$

$$u_t = \sigma_1 = xK_1 + 4u_{xx} + 8u^2 + 2u_x\partial^{-1}u, \quad (5.5.15b)$$

$$u_t = \sigma_2 = xK_2 + 6K_{1,x} + 12uu_{xx} + 32u^3 + 2K_1\partial^{-1}u + 6u_x\partial^{-1}u^2. \quad (5.5.15c)$$

其中 K_1 与 K_2 是 KdV 等谱流

$$K_1 = u_{xxx} + 6uu_x, \quad (5.5.16a)$$

$$K_2 = u_{xxxxx} + 10uu_{xxx} + 20u_xu_{xx} + 30u^2u_x. \quad (5.5.16b)$$

(5.5.15b) 即为非等谱 KdV 方程, 它所对应的时间发展式为

$$\phi_t = (-2\lambda - xu_x - 2u)\phi + (5\lambda x + 2xu + 2\partial^{-1}u)\phi_x, \quad (5.5.17)$$

或写成

$$\phi_t = x[\phi_{xxx} + 3(\lambda + u)\phi_x] - 2\phi_{xx} - 4u\phi + 2\phi_x\partial^{-1}u. \quad (5.5.18)$$

5.6 非等谱 KdV 方程 Hirota 形式的解

利用函数变换可将非等谱 KdV 方程写成双线性导数的形式, 由此求得非等谱 KdV 方程的单孤子解, 双孤子解和三孤子解, 进而猜测出多孤子解的表达式.

在等式 (5.5.15b) 中用 $-t$ 代 t , 并在等式两端同时对 x 积分, 且令常数项为零得

$$\partial^{-1}u_t + x(3u^2 + u_{xx}) + 3u_x + 3\partial^{-1}u^2 + 2u\partial^{-1}u = 0, \quad (5.6.1)$$

作变换

$$u = 2(\ln f)_{xx}, \quad (5.6.2)$$

(5.6.1) 化为

$$\frac{1}{f^2}D_x D_t f \cdot f + \frac{1}{f^2}x D_x^4 f \cdot f + \frac{4}{f^2}D_x f_{xx} \cdot f + \partial^{-1} \frac{1}{f^2} D_x^4 f \cdot f = 0, \quad (5.6.3a)$$

上式两端对 x 求导, 则有

$$\frac{1}{f^4} D_x(D_x D_t f \cdot f) \cdot f^2 + \frac{1}{f^4} D_x(x D_x^4 f \cdot f) \cdot f^2 + \frac{4}{f^4} D_x(D_x f_{xx} \cdot f) \cdot f^2 + \frac{1}{f^2} D_x^4 f \cdot f = 0. \quad (5.6.3b)$$

引进函数 g , 使成立

$$\frac{1}{f^2} D_x^4 f \cdot f = \frac{1}{f^4} D_x f g \cdot f^2, \quad (5.6.4a)$$

化简得

$$D_x^4 f \cdot f = D_x g \cdot f. \quad (5.6.4b)$$

将 (5.6.4a) 代入 (5.6.3b) 给出

$$D_x D_t f \cdot f + x D_x^4 f \cdot f + 4 D_x f_{xx} \cdot f + f g = 0. \quad (5.6.5)$$

则 (5.6.4b) 与 (5.6.5) 就构成了非等谱 KdV 方程的双线性导数方程.

设 $f(t, x)$ 与 $g(t, x)$ 可按参数 ϵ 展开成级数

$$f(t, x) = 1 + f^{(1)} \epsilon + f^{(2)} \epsilon^2 + \dots + f^{(j)} \epsilon^j + \dots, \quad (5.6.6a)$$

$$g(t, x) = g^{(1)} \epsilon + g^{(2)} \epsilon^2 + \dots + g^{(j)} \epsilon^j + \dots, \quad (5.6.6b)$$

在 (5.6.5) 与 (5.6.4b) 中比较 ϵ 的同次幂系数有

$$2f_{xt}^{(1)} + 2x f_{xxxx}^{(1)} + 4f_{xxx}^{(1)} + g^{(1)} = 0, \quad (5.6.7a)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & 2f_{xt}^{(2)} + 2x f_{xxxx}^{(2)} + 4f_{xxx}^{(2)} + g^{(2)} \\ &= -D_x D_t f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)} - x D_x^4 f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)} - 4D_x f_{xx}^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)} - f^{(1)} g^{(1)}, \end{aligned} \quad (5.6.7b)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & 2f_{xt}^{(3)} + 2x f_{xxxx}^{(3)} + 4f_{xxx}^{(3)} + g^{(3)} = -2D_x D_t f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} - 2x D_x^4 f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} \\ & -4(D_x f_{xx}^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} + D_x f_{xx}^{(2)} \cdot f^{(1)}) - f^{(1)} g^{(2)} - f^{(2)} g^{(1)}, \end{aligned} \quad (5.6.7c)$$

.....,

$$2f_{xxxx}^{(1)} - g_x^{(1)} = 0, \quad (5.6.8a)$$

$$2f_{xxxx}^{(2)} - g_x^{(2)} = D_x g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)} - D_x^4 f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)}, \quad (5.6.8b)$$

$$2f_{xxxx}^{(3)} - g_x^{(3)} = D_x g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} + D_x g^{(2)} \cdot f^{(1)} - 2D_x^4 f^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)}, \quad (5.6.8c)$$

.....

由 (5.6.8a) 和 (5.6.7a) 得

$$g^{(1)} = 2f_{xxx}^{(1)}, \quad f_t^{(1)} + x f_{xxx}^{(1)} + 3f_{xxx}^{(1)} = 0, \quad (5.6.9a)$$

设

$$f^{(1)} = \omega_1(t)e^{\xi_1}, \quad \xi_1 = k_1(t)x + \xi_1^{(0)}, \quad (5.6.9b)$$

把 (5.6.9b) 代入 (5.6.9a) 给出

$$\omega_{1,t}(t) = -2k_1^2(t)\omega_1(t), \quad k_{1,t}(t) = -k_1^3(t), \quad g^{(1)} = 2\omega_1(t)k_1^3(t)e^{\xi_1}, \quad (5.6.9c)$$

由此解得

$$k_1(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{c_1 + 2t}}, \quad \omega_1(t) = \frac{1}{c_1 + 2t}, \quad (5.6.9d)$$

其中 c_1 是任意常数. 把 $f^{(1)}$ 代入 (5.6.7) 与 (5.6.8) 依次推知

$$f^{(j)} = 0, \quad g^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 2, 3, \dots \quad (5.6.9e)$$

而 (5.6.6) 取有限和 ($\epsilon = 1$)

$$f(t, x) = 1 + \omega_1(t)e^{\xi_1}, \quad g(t, x) = 2\omega_1(t)k_1^3(t)e^{\xi_1}, \quad (5.6.9f)$$

所以非等谱 KdV 方程的单孤子解为

$$u = 2[\ln(1 + \omega_1(t)e^{\xi_1})]_{xx} = \frac{k_1^2(t)}{2} \operatorname{sech}^2 \frac{[\xi_1 + \ln \omega_1(t)]}{2}, \quad (5.6.10)$$

其图形为 Fig6.

类似地取

$$f^{(1)} = \omega_1(t)e^{\xi_1} + \omega_2(t)e^{\xi_2}, \quad \xi_j = k_j(t)x + \xi_j^{(0)} \quad (j = 1, 2), \quad (5.6.11a)$$

通过计算 (5.6.9a), (5.6.7) 和 (5.6.8) 依次有

$$g^{(1)} = 2\omega_1(t)k_1^3(t)e^{\xi_1} + 2\omega_2(t)k_2^3(t)e^{\xi_2}, \quad (5.6.11b)$$

$$f^{(2)} = \omega_1(t)\omega_2(t)e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2 + A_{12}}, \quad g^{(2)} = 2\omega_1(t)\omega_2(t)[k_1^3(t) + k_2^3(t)]e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2 + A_{12}}, \quad (5.6.11c)$$

$$\omega_{j,t}(t) = -2k_j^2(t)\omega_j(t), \quad k_{j,t}(t) = -k_j^3(t), \quad k_j(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{c_j + 2t}}, \quad \omega_j(t) = \frac{1}{c_j + 2t}, \quad j = 1, 2, \quad (5.6.11d)$$

$$e^{A_{12}} = \frac{[k_1(t) - k_2(t)]^2}{[k_1(t) + k_2(t)]^2}, \quad (5.6.11e)$$

和

$$f^{(j)} = 0, \quad g^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 3, 4, \dots \quad (5.6.11f)$$

从而由 (5.6.2) 得双孤子解, 其中

$$f = 1 + \omega_1(t)e^{\xi_1} + \omega_2(t)e^{\xi_2} + \omega_1(t)\omega_2(t)e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2 + A_{12}}. \quad (5.6.12)$$

双孤子解的图形为 Fig7.

同样如果我们取

$$f^{(1)} = \omega_1(t)e^{\xi_1} + \omega_2(t)e^{\xi_2} + \omega_3(t)e^{\xi_3}, \quad \xi_j = k_j(t)x + \xi_j^{(0)} \quad (j = 1, 2, 3), \quad (5.6.13)$$

可以算得

$$\begin{aligned} g = & 2\omega_1(t)k_1^3(t)e^{\xi_1} + 2\omega_2(t)k_2^3(t)e^{\xi_2} + 2\omega_3(t)k_3^3(t)e^{\xi_3} + 2\omega_1(t)\omega_2(t)[k_1^3(t) + k_2^3(t)]e^{\xi_1+\xi_2+A_{12}} \\ & + 2\omega_1(t)\omega_3(t)[k_1^3(t) + k_3^3(t)]e^{\xi_1+\xi_3+A_{13}} + 2\omega_2(t)\omega_3(t)[k_2^3(t) + k_3^3(t)]e^{\xi_2+\xi_3+A_{23}} \\ & + 2\omega_1(t)\omega_2(t)\omega_3(t)[k_1^3(t) + k_2^3(t) + k_3^3(t)]e^{\xi_1+\xi_2+\xi_3+A_{12}+A_{13}+A_{23}}, \end{aligned} \quad (5.6.14a)$$

非等谱 KdV 方程的三孤子解为

$$\begin{aligned} u = & 2[\ln(1 + \omega_1(t)e^{\xi_1} + \omega_2(t)e^{\xi_2} + \omega_3(t)e^{\xi_3} + \omega_1(t)\omega_2(t)e^{\xi_1+\xi_2+A_{12}} + \omega_1(t)\omega_3(t)e^{\xi_1+\xi_3+A_{13}} \\ & + \omega_2(t)\omega_3(t)e^{\xi_2+\xi_3+A_{23}} + \omega_1(t)\omega_2(t)\omega_3(t)e^{\xi_1+\xi_2+\xi_3+A_{12}+A_{13}+A_{23}})]_{xx}, \end{aligned} \quad (5.6.14b)$$

$$\omega_{j,t}(t) = -2k_j^2(t)\omega_j(t), \quad k_{j,t}(t) = -k_j^3(t), \quad k_j(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{c_j + 2t}}, \quad \omega_j(t) = \frac{1}{c_j + 2t}, \quad j = 1, 2, 3, \quad (5.6.14c)$$

$$e^{A_{jl}} = \frac{[k_j(t) - k_l(t)]^2}{[k_j(t) + k_l(t)]^2}, \quad (j < l, j, l = 1, 2, 3). \quad (5.6.14d)$$

一般地如果取

$$f^{(1)} = \sum_{j=1}^N \omega_j(t)e^{\xi_j}, \quad \xi_j = k_j(t)x + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad (5.6.15)$$

则得非等谱方程的 N 孤子解, 其中

$$f = \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N \epsilon_j(\xi_j + \ln \omega_j(t)) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \epsilon_j \epsilon_l A_{jl}\right], \quad (5.6.16a)$$

$$\omega_{j,t}(t) = -2k_j^2(t)\omega_j(t), \quad k_{j,t}(t) = -k_j^3(t), \quad k_j(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{c_j + 2t}}, \quad \omega_j(t) = \frac{1}{c_j + 2t}, \quad (5.6.16b)$$

$$e^{A_{jl}} = \frac{[k_j(t) - k_l(t)]^2}{[k_j(t) + k_l(t)]^2}, \quad (5.6.16c)$$

而对 ϵ 的求和应取过 $\epsilon_j = 0, 1 \quad (j = 1, 2, \dots, N)$ 的所有一切可能的组合.

5.7 非等谱 KdV 方程的 Wronskian 形式的解

若方程 (5.6.5) 中的 $D_x^4 f \cdot f$ 用 $D_x g \cdot f$ 替代, 则有

$$D_x D_t f \cdot f + x D_x g \cdot f + 4 D_x f_{xx} \cdot f + f g = 0, \quad (5.7.1a)$$

或

$$2(f_{xt}f - f_x f_t) + x(g_x f - g f_x) + 4(f_{xxx}f - f_{xx}f_x) + fg = 0, \quad (5.7.1b)$$

显然 (5.7.1b) 可整理成

$$f(2f_t + xg + 4f_{xx})_x + f_x(-2f_t - xg - 4f_{xx}) = 0. \quad (5.7.2)$$

设

$$2f_t + xg + 4f_{xx} = h, \quad (5.7.3)$$

(5.7.2) 简化为

$$fh_x - f_x h = 0, \quad (5.7.4)$$

由此推知

$$h = \lambda(t)f, \quad (5.7.5)$$

把 (5.7.5) 代入 (5.7.3) 给出

$$2f_t + xg + 4f_{xx} = \lambda(t)f, \quad (5.7.6)$$

利用 Hirota 方法得到的单双孤子解等代入 (5.7.6), 定出 $\lambda(t) = 0$, 所以这时有

$$g = \frac{2}{x}(-f_t - 2f_{xx}). \quad (5.7.7)$$

上述说明使我们能验证 Wronskian 行列式满足双线性方程 (5.6.4b) 与 (5.6.5). 事实上, 设

$$f = |\phi, \phi^{(1)}, \dots, \phi^{(N-1)}| = |0, 1, \dots, N-1| = |\widehat{N-1}|, \quad (5.7.8a)$$

其中

$$\phi_{j,xx} = \frac{k_j^2(t)}{4}\phi_j, \quad \phi_{j,t} = -4x\phi_{j,xxx} + 2(2N-3)\phi_{j,xx}. \quad (5.7.8b, c)$$

若在 (5.7.8c) 等式的两端对 x 求 i 阶导数, 则有

$$\phi_{j,t}^{(i)} = -4x\phi_j^{(i+3)} + [-4i + 2(2N-3)]\phi_j^{(i+2)}, \quad (5.7.8d)$$

利用 Wronskian 行列式的性质, 由 (5.7.8d) 不难算出

$$\begin{aligned} f_t &= -4x|\widehat{N-4}, N, N-2, N-1| - 4x|\widehat{N-3}, N+1, N-1| - 4x|\widehat{N-2}, N+2| \\ &\quad - 4(N-2)|\widehat{N-3}, N, N-1| - 4(N-1)|\widehat{N-2}, N+1| \\ &\quad + 2(2N-3)|\widehat{N-3}, N, N-1| + 2(2N-3)|\widehat{N-2}, N+1| \\ &= -4x|\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, N| + 4x|\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N+1| - 4x|\widehat{N-2}, N+2| \end{aligned}$$

$$-2|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N}| - 2|\widehat{N-2, N+1}|, \quad (5.7.9a)$$

$$f_x = |\widehat{N-2, N}|, \quad (5.7.9b)$$

$$f_{xx} = |\widehat{N-3, N-1, N}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+1}|, \quad (5.7.9c)$$

把 (5.7.9) 代入 (5.7.7), 即知 g 可表示为

$$g = 8[|\widehat{N-4, N-2, N-1, N}| - |\widehat{N-3, N-1, N+1}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+2}|]. \quad (5.7.10)$$

展开 (5.6.4b), 可见 f 与 g 满足双线性方程

$$f(2f_{xxxx} - g_x) + f_x(-8f_{xxx} + g) + 6f_{xx}^2 = 0, \quad (5.7.11)$$

从 (5.7.9b,c), (5.7.10) 继续算出

$$f_{xxx} = |\widehat{N-4, N-2, N-1, N}| + 2|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N+1}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+2}|, \quad (5.7.12a)$$

$$\begin{aligned} f_{xxxx} = & |\widehat{N-5, N-3, N-2, N-1, N}| + 3|\widehat{N-4, N-2, N-1, N+1}| \\ & + 2|\widehat{N-3, N, N+1}| + 3|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N+2}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+3}|, \end{aligned} \quad (5.7.12b)$$

$$g_x = 8|\widehat{N-5, N-3, N-2, N-1, N}| - 8|\widehat{N-3, N, N+1}| + 8|\widehat{N-2, N+3}|, \quad (5.7.12c)$$

把 (5.7.9b,c), (5.7.10) 和 (5.7.12) 代入 (5.7.11) 的左端, 我们有

$$\begin{aligned} & (-6|\widehat{N-5, N-3, N-2, N-1, N}| + 6|\widehat{N-4, N-2, N-1, N+1}| \\ & + 12|\widehat{N-3, N, N+1}| + 6|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N+2}| - 6|\widehat{N-2, N+3}|)|\widehat{N-1}| \\ & - 24|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N+1}||\widehat{N-2, N}| + 6(|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N}| + |\widehat{N-2, N+1}|)^2. \end{aligned} \quad (5.7.13)$$

由 Wronskian 行列式的性质 (3.1.5), 化简 (5.7.13) 我们到达

$$\begin{aligned} & 24|\widehat{N-3, N, N+1}||\widehat{N-1}| - 24|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N+1}||\widehat{N-2, N}| \\ & + 24|\widehat{N-3, N-1, N}||\widehat{N-2, N+1}| = 0, \end{aligned} \quad (5.7.14)$$

就是元素 ϕ_j 满足条件 (5.7.8b,c) 的行列式 (5.7.8a) 是方程 (5.6.4b) 与 (5.6.5) 的解.

若取

$$\phi_j = A_j(t)(e^{\frac{\xi_j}{2}} + (-1)^j e^{-\frac{\xi_j}{2}}), \quad (j = 1, 2, \dots, N), \quad (5.7.15a)$$

$$\xi_j = k_j(t)x + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad A_j(t) = k_j(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}(2N-3)} = (c_j + 2t)^{\frac{1}{4}(2N-3)}, \quad (5.7.15b)$$

这时 Wronskian 行列式 (5.7.8a) 可表示为

$$f = |A_j(t)(e^{\frac{\xi_j}{2}} + (-1)^j e^{-\frac{\xi_j}{2}}), A_j(t) \frac{k_j(t)}{2} (e^{\frac{\xi_j}{2}} + (-1)^{j+1} e^{-\frac{\xi_j}{2}}),$$

$$\cdots, A_j(t) \left(\frac{k_j(t)}{2} \right)^{N-1} \left(e^{\frac{\xi_j}{2}} + (-1)^{j+N-1} e^{-\frac{\xi_j}{2}} \right), \quad (5.7.16)$$

类似于 (4.4.1) 的分析, (5.7.16) 又化成

$$f = \left[\prod_{j=1}^N A_j(t) \right] \sum_{\epsilon=\pm 1} \epsilon_2 \epsilon_4 \cdots \epsilon_{2[\frac{N}{2}]} \Delta \left(\epsilon_1 \frac{k_1(t)}{2}, \epsilon_2 \frac{k_2(t)}{2}, \cdots, \epsilon_N \frac{k_N(t)}{2} \right) \exp \left(\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^N \epsilon_j \xi_j \right), \quad (5.7.17)$$

其中 $\Delta \left(\epsilon_1 \frac{k_1(t)}{2}, \epsilon_2 \frac{k_2(t)}{2}, \cdots, \epsilon_N \frac{k_N(t)}{2} \right)$ 是元为 $\epsilon_1 \frac{k_1(t)}{2}, \epsilon_2 \frac{k_2(t)}{2}, \cdots, \epsilon_N \frac{k_N(t)}{2}$ 的 Vandermonde 行列式, 其值为

$$\Delta \left(\epsilon_1 \frac{k_1(t)}{2}, \epsilon_2 \frac{k_2(t)}{2}, \cdots, \epsilon_N \frac{k_N(t)}{2} \right) = \prod_{1 \leq j < l} \left(\epsilon_l \frac{k_l(t)}{2} - \epsilon_j \frac{k_j(t)}{2} \right). \quad (5.7.18)$$

对于固定的 m 此等式的右端含奇数个形如 $(\epsilon_{2m} \frac{k_{2m}(t)}{2} - \epsilon_j \frac{k_j(t)}{2})$ 的因式, 而只含因式 $(\epsilon_{2m+1} \frac{k_{2m+1}(t)}{2} - \epsilon_j \frac{k_j(t)}{2})$ 偶数个, 所以我们有

$$\epsilon_2 \epsilon_4 \cdots \epsilon_{2[\frac{N}{2}]} \Delta \left(\epsilon_1 \frac{k_1(t)}{2}, \epsilon_2 \frac{k_2(t)}{2}, \cdots, \epsilon_N \frac{k_N(t)}{2} \right) = \left(-\frac{1}{2} \right)^{\frac{N(N-1)}{2}} \prod_{1 \leq j < l} \epsilon_l (\epsilon_j k_j(t) - \epsilon_l k_l(t)). \quad (5.7.19)$$

将 (5.7.19) 代入 (5.7.17) 即得 Wronskian 行列式 (5.7.8a) 的显式

$$f = \left[\prod_{j=1}^N A_j(t) \right] \left(-\frac{1}{2} \right)^{\frac{N(N-1)}{2}} \sum_{\epsilon=\pm 1} \prod_{1 \leq j < l} \epsilon_l (\epsilon_j k_j(t) - \epsilon_l k_l(t)) \exp \left(\sum_{j=1}^N \frac{\epsilon_j \xi_j}{2} \right). \quad (5.7.20)$$

事实上, 设 $\mu_j = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \epsilon_j)$, 则当 ϵ_j 为 -1 或 1 时, μ_j 取值 0 或 1 . 容易看出无论 ϵ_j 与 ϵ_l 同号或异号时均成立等式

$$\epsilon_l \frac{\epsilon_j k_j(t) - \epsilon_l k_l(t)}{k_j(t) - k_l(t)} = \left(\frac{k_l(t) + k_j(t)}{k_l(t) - k_j(t)} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}(1 - \epsilon_j \epsilon_l)} = \left(\frac{k_l(t) - k_j(t)}{k_l(t) + k_j(t)} \right)^{2\mu_j \mu_l - \mu_j - \mu_l}, \quad (5.7.21)$$

于是 f 的表达式 (5.7.20) 化为

$$f = \left[\prod_{j=1}^N A_j(t) \right] \prod_{1 \leq j < l} (k_j(t) - k_l(t)) \exp \left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^N \xi_j \right) \left\{ \sum_{\mu=0,1} \prod_{1 \leq j < l} \left(\frac{k_l(t) - k_j(t)}{k_l(t) + k_j(t)} \right)^{-\mu_j - \mu_l} \exp \left(\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j \xi_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l} \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl} \right) \right\}, \quad (5.7.22)$$

其中 $e^{A_{jl}}$ 表示为 (5.6.16c). 但当 $0 < k_1(t) < k_2(t) < \cdots < k_N(t)$ 时, 我们有

$$\begin{aligned} \prod_{1 \leq j < l} \left(\frac{k_l(t) - k_j(t)}{k_l(t) + k_j(t)} \right)^{-\mu_j - \mu_l} &= \prod_{1 \leq l < j} (-1)^{\mu_j} \prod_{j=1}^N \prod_{l=1, l \neq j}^N \left(\frac{k_l(t) - k_j(t)}{k_l(t) + k_j(t)} \right)^{-\mu_j} \\ &= \exp \left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^N \sum_{l=1, l \neq j}^N \mu_j A_{jl} \right). \end{aligned}$$

因此若令 $\eta_j = \xi_j - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{l=1, l \neq j}^N A_{jl}$, 则 f 又可写成

$$f = \left[\prod_{j=1}^N A_j(t) \right] \prod_{1 \leq j < l}^N (k_j(t) - k_l(t)) \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^N \xi_j \left[\sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp\left(\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j \eta_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl}\right) \right]\right). \quad (5.7.23)$$

可见 (5.7.23) 所对应的解即是非等谱 KdV 方程的 N 孤子解. 由于 $k_j(t)$ 是关于 t 的函数, 所以 (5.7.23) 与 (5.1.16) 按 (5.6.2) 构成非等谱 KdV 方程的解时是不同的.

5.8 非等谱 KdV 方程的 Bäcklund 变换

在非等谱 KdV 方程的谱问题与时间发展式中用 $-t$ 替换 t 并作变换

$$u = 2(\ln f)_{xx}, \quad \phi = \frac{g}{f}, \quad (5.8.1)$$

就可写成

$$D_x^2 g \cdot f = \lambda g f, \quad (5.8.2a)$$

$$D_t g \cdot f + x(D_x^3 + 3\lambda D_x)g \cdot f - 2D_x^2 g \cdot f + 4D_x g \cdot f_x = 0, \quad (5.8.2b)$$

其恰是非等谱 KdV 方程双线性导数 Bäcklund 变换. 若 $f = 1$, 则方程 (5.8.2) 成为

$$g_{xx} = \lambda g, \quad (5.8.3a)$$

$$g_t + xg_{xxx} + 3x\lambda g_x - 2g_{xx} = 0. \quad (5.8.3b)$$

令 $\lambda = \frac{k_1^2(t)}{4}$ 解得

$$g = \omega_1(t)e^{\frac{\xi_1}{2}} + \omega_1(t)e^{-\frac{\xi_1}{2}}, \quad \xi_1 = k_1(t)x + \xi_1^{(0)}, \quad (5.8.4a)$$

$$k_{1,t}(t) = -k_1^3(t), \quad \omega_{1,t}(t) = \frac{k_1^2(t)}{2}\omega_1(t), \quad k_1(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{c_1 + 2t}}, \quad \omega_1(t) = \sqrt[4]{c_1 + 2t}, \quad (5.8.4b)$$

其对应的是非等谱 KdV 方程的单孤子解. 若取 f 的表达式为 (5.8.4), 并设所求函数 g 可表示成

$$g = c_1(t)\omega_1(t)\omega_2(t)\left[e^{\frac{\xi_1 + \xi_2}{2}} + e^{\frac{-\xi_1 - \xi_2}{2}}\right] + c_2(t)\omega_1(t)\omega_2(t)\left[e^{\frac{\xi_1 - \xi_2}{2}} + e^{\frac{-\xi_1 + \xi_2}{2}}\right], \quad (5.8.5)$$

其中 ξ_1, ξ_2 的表达式为 (5.6.15). 将 f, g 代入 (5.8.2) 即可定出

$$\lambda = \frac{k_2^2(t)}{2}, \quad c_1(t) = [k_1(t) - k_2(t)], \quad c_2(t) = -[k_1(t) + k_2(t)], \quad (5.8.6a)$$

$$k_{2,t}(t) = -k_2^3(t), \quad \omega_{2,t}(t) = \frac{3}{2}k_2^2(t)\omega_2(t), \quad \omega_{1,t}(t) = \frac{3}{2}k_1^2(t)\omega_1(t), \quad (5.8.6c)$$

由 (5.8.5) 与 (5.8.6) 即得非等谱 KdV 方程 (5.5.15b) 的双孤子解. 同样若取 f 的表达式为 (5.8.5), 类似的计算得 $\lambda = \frac{k_3^2(t)}{4}$, 且所求函数 g 为

$$\begin{aligned} g = & c_3(t)\omega_1(t)\omega_2(t)\omega_3(t)(e^{\frac{\xi_1+\xi_2+\xi_3}{2}} + e^{\frac{-\xi_1-\xi_2-\xi_3}{2}}) \\ & + c_4(t)\omega_1(t)\omega_2(t)\omega_3(t)(e^{\frac{\xi_1+\xi_2-\xi_3}{2}} + e^{\frac{-\xi_1-\xi_2+\xi_3}{2}}) \\ & + c_5(t)\omega_1(t)\omega_2(t)\omega_3(t)(e^{\frac{\xi_1-\xi_2+\xi_3}{2}} + e^{\frac{-\xi_1+\xi_2-\xi_3}{2}}) \\ & + c_6(t)\omega_1(t)\omega_2(t)\omega_3(t)(e^{\frac{-\xi_1+\xi_2+\xi_3}{2}} + e^{\frac{\xi_1-\xi_2-\xi_3}{2}}), \end{aligned} \quad (5.8.7)$$

式中

$$c_3(t) = [k_1(t) - k_2(t)][k_1(t) - k_3(t)][k_2(t) - k_3(t)], \quad (5.8.8a)$$

$$c_4(t) = [k_1(t) - k_2(t)][k_1(t) + k_3(t)][k_2(t) + k_3(t)], \quad (5.8.8b)$$

$$c_5(t) = [k_1(t) + k_2(t)][k_1(t) - k_3(t)][k_2(t) + k_3(t)], \quad (5.8.8c)$$

$$c_6(t) = [k_1(t) + k_2(t)][k_1(t) + k_3(t)][k_2(t) - k_3(t)], \quad (5.8.8d)$$

$$k_{3,t}(t) = -k_3^3(t), \quad \omega_{1,t} = \frac{5}{2}k_1^2(t)\omega_1(t), \quad \omega_{2,t} = \frac{5}{2}k_2^2(t)\omega_2(t), \quad \omega_{3,t} = \frac{5}{2}k_3^2(t)\omega_3(t), \quad (5.8.8e)$$

由此即得方程 (5.5.15b) 的三孤子解. 一般在求得相应于非等谱 KdV 方程 $N-1$ 孤子解之 g_{N-1} 的表达式后, 取 g_{N-1} 为 f , 则从双线性导数方程 (5.8.2) 给出 $\lambda = \frac{k_N^2(t)}{4}$, 且

$$g_N = \sum_{\epsilon=\pm 1} \prod_{1 \leq j < l}^N \epsilon_l [\epsilon_j k_j(t) - \epsilon_l k_l(t)] \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N \left[\epsilon_j \frac{\xi_j}{2} + \ln \omega_j(t)\right]\right], \quad (5.8.9a)$$

$$\xi_j = k_j(t)x + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad k_{j,t}(t) = -k_j^3(t), \quad \omega_{j,t} = \frac{2N-1}{2}k_j^2(t)\omega_j(t). \quad (5.8.9b)$$

最后考虑非等谱 KdV 方程双线性 Bäcklund 变换的 Wronskian 行列式解及其与 (5.8.9) 的一致性. 对于等谱 KdV 方程的双线性 Bäcklund 变换 (5.8.2a) 与

$$(D_t - D_x^3 - 3\lambda D_x)g \cdot f = 0, \quad (5.8.10)$$

已知它具有 Wronskian 行列式解

$$g = |\widehat{N-1}|, \quad f = |\widehat{N-2}, \tau|, \quad (5.8.11a, b)$$

其中

$$\phi_{j,xx} = \frac{k_j^2}{4}\phi_j, \quad \phi_{j,t} = 4\phi_{j,xxx}. \quad (5.8.11c, d)$$

而对于非等谱 KdV 方程的 Bäcklund 变换 (5.8.2), 现在假设 g 与 f 的 Wronskian 行列式解为 (5.8.11a,b), 其中 g 的元素满足

$$\phi_{j,xx} = \frac{k_j^2(t)}{4}\phi_j, \quad \phi_{j,t} = -4x\phi_{j,xxx} + 2(2N-1)\phi_{j,xx}, \quad (5.8.12a, b)$$

而 f 的元素满足 (5.8.12a) 与

$$\phi_{j,t} = -4x\phi_{j,xxx} + 2(2N-3)\phi_{j,xx}. \quad (5.8.12c)$$

则 (5.8.11a,b) 满足双线性导数方程 (5.8.2). 由 Wronskian 的性质与 (5.8.11,12), 容易算出

$$f_x = |\widehat{N-3}, N-1, \tau|, \quad f_{xx} = |\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, \tau| + |\widehat{N-3}, N, \tau|, \quad (5.8.13a)$$

$$f_{xxx} = |\widehat{N-5}, N-3, N-2, N-1, \tau| + 2|\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N, \tau| + |\widehat{N-3}, N+1, \tau|, \quad (5.8.13b)$$

$$f_t = -4x[|\widehat{N-5}, N-3, N-2, N-1, \tau| - |\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N, \tau| + |\widehat{N-3}, N+1, \tau|] \\ -6|\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, \tau| + 2|\widehat{N-3}, N, \tau|, \quad (5.8.13c)$$

和

$$g_x = |\widehat{N-2}, N|, \quad g_{xx} = |\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+1|, \quad (5.8.14a)$$

$$g_{xxx} = |\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, N| + 2|\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N+1| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+2|, \quad (5.8.14b)$$

$$g_t = -4x[|\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, N| - |\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N+1| + |\widehat{N-2}, N+2|] \\ -6|\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N| + 2|\widehat{N-2}, N+1|, \quad (5.8.14c)$$

如果取

$$\phi_j(t, x) = \omega_j(t)e^{\frac{\xi_j}{2}} + \omega_j(t)(-1)^{j+1}e^{-\frac{\xi_j}{2}}, \quad \xi_j = k_j(t)x + \xi_j^{(0)},$$

$$k_{j,t}(t) = -k_j^3(t), \quad \omega_{j,t}(t) = \frac{2N-1}{2}k_j^2(t)\omega_j(t), \quad (j = 1, 2, \dots, N). \quad (5.8.15)$$

把 (5.8.13-14) 代入 (5.8.2a,b), 并利用 (3.1.8-10) 得

$$2|\widehat{N-2}, \tau||\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N| - 2|\widehat{N-3}, N-1, \tau||\widehat{N-2}, N| \\ + 2|\widehat{N-3}, N, \tau||\widehat{N-1}| = 0, \quad (5.8.16a)$$

$$-6x|\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N+1||\widehat{N-2}, \tau| - 6x|\widehat{N-3}, N+1, \tau||\widehat{N-1}| \\ + 6x|\widehat{N-2}, N+1||\widehat{N-3}, N-1, \tau| + 6x|\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, N||\widehat{N-2}, \tau| \\ - 6x|\widehat{N-2}, N||\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N-1, \tau| + 6x|\widehat{N-4}, N-2, N, \tau||\widehat{N-1}| \\ + 8(|\widehat{N-2}, N||\widehat{N-3}, N-1, \tau| - |\widehat{N-3}, N-1, N||\widehat{N-2}, \tau| \\ - |\widehat{N-1}||\widehat{N-3}, N, \tau|) = 0, \quad (5.8.16b)$$

从而就证明了所要的结论.

若 ϕ_j 的取值为 (5.8.15), 则 Wronskian 行列式 (5.8.11a) 成为

$$g = \left| \omega_j(t) \left[e^{\frac{\xi_j}{2}} + (-1)^{j+1} e^{-\frac{\xi_j}{2}} \right], \frac{k_j(t)}{2} \omega_j(t) \left[e^{\frac{\xi_j}{2}} + (-1)^{j+2} e^{-\frac{\xi_j}{2}} \right], \dots, \right. \\ \left. \left[\frac{k_j(t)}{2} \right]^{N-1} \omega_j(t) \left[e^{\frac{\xi_j}{2}} + (-1)^{j+N} e^{-\frac{\xi_j}{2}} \right] \right| \\ = \sum_{\epsilon=\pm 1} \epsilon_2 \epsilon_4 \cdots \epsilon_{2[\frac{N}{2}]} \Delta \left(\epsilon_1 \frac{k_1(t)}{2}, \epsilon_2 \frac{k_2(t)}{2}, \dots, \epsilon_N \frac{k_N(t)}{2} \right) \exp \left[\sum_{j=1}^N \left(\frac{1}{2} \epsilon_j \xi_j + \ln \omega_j \right) \right], \quad (5.8.17)$$

其中对 ϵ 的和式表示 $\epsilon_j (j = 1, 2, \dots, N)$ 取 1 或 -1 时所有可能项之和, 而行列式 $\Delta(\epsilon_1 \frac{k_1(t)}{2}, \epsilon_2 \frac{k_2(t)}{2}, \dots, \epsilon_N \frac{k_N(t)}{2})$ 是元为 $\epsilon_1 \frac{k_1(t)}{2}, \epsilon_2 \frac{k_2(t)}{2}, \dots, \epsilon_N \frac{k_N(t)}{2}$ 的 Vandermonde 行列式, 其值为

$$\Delta \left(\epsilon_1 \frac{k_1(t)}{2}, \epsilon_2 \frac{k_2(t)}{2}, \dots, \epsilon_N \frac{k_N(t)}{2} \right) = \prod_{1 \leq j < l}^N \left(\epsilon_l \frac{k_l(t)}{2} - \epsilon_j \frac{k_j(t)}{2} \right). \quad (5.8.18)$$

类似于 (4.4.3-4) 的分析, 我们有

$$\epsilon_2 \epsilon_4 \cdots \epsilon_{2[\frac{N}{2}]} \Delta \left(\epsilon_1 \frac{k_1(t)}{2}, \epsilon_2 \frac{k_2(t)}{2}, \dots, \epsilon_N \frac{k_N(t)}{2} \right) = \left(-\frac{1}{2} \right)^{\frac{N(N-1)}{2}} \prod_{1 \leq j < l}^N \epsilon_l [\epsilon_j k_j(t) - \epsilon_l k_l(t)]. \quad (5.8.19)$$

把 (5.8.19) 代入 (5.8.17) 即得 Wronskian 行列式 (5.8.11a) 的显式

$$f = \left(-\frac{1}{2} \right)^{\frac{N(N-1)}{2}} \sum_{\epsilon=\pm 1} \prod_{1 \leq j < l}^N \epsilon_l (\epsilon_j k_j(t) - \epsilon_l k_l(t)) \exp \left[\sum_{j=1}^N \left(\frac{\epsilon_j \xi_j}{2} + \ln \omega_j(t) \right) \right], \quad (5.8.20a)$$

$$\xi_j = k_j(t)x + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad k_{j,t}(t) = -k_j^3(t), \quad \omega_{j,t}(t) = \frac{(2N-1)}{2} k_j^2(t) \omega_j(t). \quad (5.8.20b)$$

比较 (5.8.20) 式与 (5.8.9) 式, 可见它们在构成非等谱 KdV 方程的 N 孤子解时是一致的.

第六章 KP 方程 Bäcklund 变换的新孤子解

在第二章中我们利用 Hirota 方法和 Wronskian 技巧分别得到一些孤子方程的新解, 本章中我们以 KP 方程为例, 利用双线性 Bäcklund 变换方法也可得到新解.

6.1 KP 方程的 Bäcklund 变换及其求解

下面我们简单回顾一下 KP 方程的 Bäcklund 变换及其求解的过程. KP 方程

$$u_t = u_{xxx} + 6uu_x + 3\partial^{-1}u_{yy}. \quad (6.1.1)$$

的谱问题与时间发展式分别为

$$\phi_y = \phi_{xx} + u\phi. \quad (6.1.2a)$$

$$\phi_t = \phi_{xxx} + 3u\phi_x + 3(\partial^{-1}u_y)\phi + 3\phi_{xy}, \quad (6.1.2b)$$

或写成

$$\phi_t = 4\phi_{xxx} + 6u\phi_x + 3(u_x + \partial^{-1}u_y)\phi. \quad (6.1.2c)$$

若设

$$u = 2(\ln f)_{xx}, \quad \phi = \frac{g}{f}. \quad (6.1.3)$$

则线性问题 (6.1.2) 可化为

$$g_y f - g f_y = g_{xx} f - 2g_x f_x + g f_{xx}, \quad (6.1.4a)$$

$$g_t f - g f_t = g_{xxx} f - 3g_{xx} f_x + 3g_x f_{xx} - g f_{xxx} + 3(g_{xy} f - g_x f_y - g_y f_x + g f_{xy}). \quad (6.1.4b)$$

从而就得到 KP 方程 (6.1.1) 的双线性导数形式的 Bäcklund 变换, 其为

$$D_y g \cdot f = D_x^2 g \cdot f, \quad (6.1.5a)$$

$$D_t g \cdot f = (D_x^3 + 3D_x D_y) g \cdot f. \quad (6.1.5b)$$

我们从双线性导数形式的 Bäcklund 变换 (6.1.5) 给出 KP 方程 (6.1.1) 的线孤子解. 取 $f = 1$, 它对应于此方程的零解, 这时 (6.1.5) 成为

$$g_y = g_{xx}, \quad (6.1.6a)$$

$$g_t = g_{xxx} + 3g_{xy} = 4g_{xxx}, \quad (6.1.6b)$$

其是通常的线性偏微分方程. 设解为

$$\begin{aligned} g_1 &= e^{\xi_1} + e^{-\eta_1}, \\ \xi_1 &= \omega_1 t + k_1 x + p_1 y + \xi_1^{(0)}, \quad p_1 = k_1^2, \quad \omega_1 = 4k_1^3, \\ \eta_1 &= \sigma_1 t + l_1 x + s_1 y + \eta_1^{(0)}, \quad s_1 = -l_1^2, \quad \sigma_1 = 4l_1^3, \end{aligned} \quad (6.1.7)$$

由此可得方程 (6.1.1) 的线单孤子解. 若取 $f = e^{\xi_1} + e^{-\eta_1}$. 由 (6.1.5) 可以得出

$$g_2 = \alpha_1 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} + \alpha_2 e^{-\eta_1 - \eta_2} + \alpha_3 e^{\xi_1 - \eta_2} + \alpha_4 e^{\xi_2 - \eta_1}, \quad (6.1.8a)$$

$$\xi_2 = \omega_2 t + k_2 x + p_2 y + \xi_2^{(0)}, \quad \eta_2 = \sigma_2 t + l_2 x + s_2 y + \eta_2^{(0)}, \quad (6.1.8b)$$

式中

$$\alpha_1 = k_1 - k_2, \quad \alpha_2 = l_1 - l_2, \quad \alpha_3 = -(l_2 + k_1), \quad \alpha_4 = -(l_1 + k_2), \quad (6.1.8c)$$

$$p_2 = k_2^2, \quad s_2 = -l_2^2, \quad \omega_2 = 4k_2^3, \quad \sigma_2 = 4l_2^3. \quad (6.1.8d)$$

表达式 (6.1.8) 对应于 KP 方程的线双孤子解. 同样若取

$$f_2 = (k_1 - k_2)e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} + (l_1 - l_2)e^{-\eta_1 - \eta_2} - (l_2 + k_1)e^{\xi_1 - \eta_2} - (l_1 + k_2)e^{\xi_2 - \eta_1}. \quad (6.1.9)$$

则从 Bäcklund 变换 (6.1.5) 可定出

$$\begin{aligned} g_3 &= \beta_1 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2 + \xi_3} + \beta_2 e^{-\eta_1 - \eta_2 - \eta_3} + \beta_3 e^{-\eta_1 + \xi_2 + \xi_3} + \beta_4 e^{\xi_1 - \eta_2 - \eta_3} \\ &+ \beta_5 e^{\xi_1 - \eta_2 + \xi_3} + \beta_6 e^{-\eta_1 + \xi_2 - \eta_3} + \beta_7 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2 - \eta_3} + \beta_8 e^{-\eta_1 - \eta_2 + \xi_3}. \end{aligned} \quad (6.1.10a)$$

$$\beta_1 = (k_1 - k_2)(k_1 - k_3)(k_2 - k_3), \quad \beta_2 = (l_1 - l_2)(l_1 - l_3)(l_2 - l_3),$$

$$\beta_3 = (l_1 + k_2)(l_1 + k_3)(k_2 - k_3), \quad \beta_4 = (l_2 + k_1)(k_1 + l_3)(l_2 - l_3),$$

$$\beta_5 = (l_2 + k_1)(k_1 - k_3)(l_2 + k_3), \quad \beta_6 = (l_1 + k_2)(l_1 - l_3)(k_2 + l_3),$$

$$\beta_7 = (k_1 - k_2)(k_1 + l_3)(k_2 + l_3), \quad \beta_8 = (l_1 - l_2)(l_1 + k_3)(l_2 + k_3), \quad (6.1.10b)$$

$$\xi_3 = \omega_3 t + k_3 x + p_3 y + \xi_3^{(0)}, \quad p_3 = k_3^2, \quad \omega_3 = 4k_3^3,$$

$$\eta_3 = \sigma_3 t + l_3 x + s_3 y + \eta_3^{(0)}, \quad s_3 = -l_3^2, \quad \sigma_3 = 4l_3^3. \quad (6.1.10c)$$

由此可算得 KP 方程的线三孤子解.

一般地在求出对应于 KP 方程的线 $N-1$ 孤子解 g_{N-1} 后, 取 g_{N-1} 为 f , 则从 Bäcklund 变换 (6.1.5) 确定对应线 N 孤子解 g_N

$$g_N = \sum_{\epsilon=0,1} \prod_{1 \leq j < i}^N (2\epsilon_i - 1) [\epsilon_j k_j + (\epsilon_j - 1)l_j - \epsilon_i k_i - (\epsilon_i - 1)l_i] \exp\left\{ \sum_{j=1}^N [\epsilon_j \xi_j + (\epsilon_j - 1)\eta_j] \right\}. \quad (6.1.11)$$

类似于 (4.4.6-8), 我们可以发现上式变为

$$g_N = \prod_{1 \leq j < i}^N (l_i - l_j) \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N (-\eta_j) \right] \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N \epsilon_j (\xi_j' + \eta_j') + \sum_{1 \leq j < i} \epsilon_i \epsilon_j \tilde{A}_{ji} \right], \quad (6.1.12a)$$

其中

$$\xi_j = \omega_j t + k_j x + p_j y + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad p_j = k_j^2, \quad \omega_j = 4k_j^3, \quad (6.1.12b)$$

$$\eta_j = \sigma_j t + l_j x + s_j y + \eta_j^{(0)}, \quad s_j = -l_j^2, \quad \sigma_j = 4l_j^3, \quad (6.1.12c)$$

$$e^{\xi_j} \prod_{j \neq i} (k_j + l_i) = e^{\xi_j'}, \quad e^{\eta_j} \prod_{j > i} (l_j - l_i) \prod_{j < i} (l_i - l_j) = e^{\eta_j'}, \quad e^{\tilde{A}_{ji}} = \frac{(l_i - l_j)(k_i - k_j)}{(k_i + l_j)(k_j + l_i)}, \quad (6.1.12d)$$

则由 Bäcklund 变换得到的 KP 方程的 N 孤子解与由 Hirota 方法得到的解 (2.2.8) ($\sigma^2 = 1$) 是一致的.

6.2 修正 Bäcklund 变换及其求解

由 KP 方程的 Bäcklund 变换 (6.1.5) 难以得到新解, 因此在本节中, 我们把 KP 方程的 Bäcklund 变换作了修正, 并由修正的 Bäcklund 变换得到一系列的解.

首先介绍一个公式, 假设

$$\xi = kx + \omega t + py + \xi^{(0)}, \quad \eta = hx + \sigma t + qy + \eta^{(0)}, \quad (6.2.1a)$$

由双线性导数的定义, 可得

$$\begin{aligned} D_x^2 e^\xi f \cdot e^\eta g &= e^{\xi+\eta} [(f_{xx} + 2kf_x + fk^2)g - 2(f_x + kf)(g_x + hg) + f(g_{xx} + 2hg_x + h^2)] \\ &= e^{\xi+\eta} [(f_{xx} - 2f_x g_x + fg_{xx}) + 2k(f_x g - fg_x) + 2h(fg_x - f_x g) + (k^2 - 2kh + h^2)fg] \\ &= e^{\xi+\eta} [D_x + (k - h)]^2 f \cdot g. \end{aligned} \quad (6.2.1b)$$

一般有

$$D_x^m e^\xi f \cdot e^\eta g = e^{\xi+\eta} [D_x + (k - h)]^m f \cdot g, \quad (6.2.2a)$$

类似地, 对于 t, y 部分

$$D_t^n e^\xi f \cdot e^\eta g = e^{\xi+\eta} [D_t + (\omega - \sigma)]^n f \cdot g, \quad (6.2.2b)$$

$$D_y^l e^\xi f \cdot e^\eta g = e^{\xi+\eta} [D_y + (p-q)]^l f \cdot g, \quad (6.2.2c)$$

和

$$D_x^m D_y^l e^\xi f \cdot e^\eta g = e^{\xi+\eta} [D_x + (k-h)]^m [D_y + (p-q)]^l f \cdot g. \quad (6.2.2d)$$

在 (6.1.5) 中用 $e^\xi f$ 替代 f , $e^\eta g$ 替代 g , 并利用公式 (6.2.2) 则有

$$[D_y + (q-p)]g \cdot f = [D_x + (h-k)]^2 g \cdot f, \quad (6.2.3a)$$

$$\begin{aligned} [D_t + (\sigma - \omega)]g \cdot f &= [D_x + (h-k)]^3 g \cdot f + 3[D_x + (h-k)][D_y + (q-p)]g \cdot f \\ &= (D_x^3 + 3D_x D_y)g \cdot f + 3(h-k)D_x^2 g \cdot f + [3(h-k)^2 + 3(q-p)]D_x g \cdot f \\ &\quad + 3(h-k)D_y g \cdot f + [(h-k)^3 + 3(h-k)(q-p)]gf. \end{aligned} \quad (6.2.3b)$$

令

$$q-p = (h-k)^2, \quad \sigma - \omega = 4(h-k)^3, \quad (h-k) = K, \quad (6.2.4)$$

则 (6.2.3) 变为

$$D_y g \cdot f - D_x^2 g \cdot f - 2K D_x g \cdot f = 0, \quad (6.2.5a)$$

$$D_t g \cdot f - D_x^3 g \cdot f - 3D_x D_y g \cdot f - 6K D_x^2 g \cdot f - 12K^2 D_x g \cdot f = 0, \quad (6.2.5b)$$

上式即为 KP 方程的修正 Bäcklund 变换.

设 f, g 分别可以按 ϵ 展成级数

$$f = 1 + f^{(1)}\epsilon + f^{(2)}\epsilon^2 + f^{(3)}\epsilon^3 + \dots, \quad (6.2.6a)$$

$$g = 1 + g^{(1)}\epsilon + g^{(2)}\epsilon^2 + g^{(3)}\epsilon^3 + \dots, \quad (6.2.6b)$$

把展开式代入 (6.2.5), 并比较 ϵ 的同次幂系数, 则有

$$g_y^{(1)} - f_y^{(1)} - g_{xx}^{(1)} - f_{xx}^{(1)} - 2K(g_x^{(1)} - f_x^{(1)}) = 0, \quad (6.2.7a)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &g_y^{(2)} - f_y^{(2)} - g_{xx}^{(2)} - f_{xx}^{(2)} - 2K(g_x^{(2)} - f_x^{(2)}) \\ &= -D_y g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)} + D_x^2 g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)} + 2K D_x g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)}, \end{aligned} \quad (6.2.7b)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &g_y^{(3)} - f_y^{(3)} - g_{xx}^{(3)} - f_{xx}^{(3)} - 2K(g_x^{(3)} - f_x^{(3)}) \\ &= -D_y(g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} + g^{(2)} \cdot f^{(1)}) + D_x^2(g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} + g^{(2)} \cdot f^{(1)}) + 2K D_x(g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} + g^{(2)} \cdot f^{(1)}), \end{aligned} \quad (6.2.7c)$$

...

$$g_t^{(1)} - f_t^{(1)} - g_{xxx}^{(1)} + f_{xxx}^{(1)} - 3g_{xy}^{(1)} - 3f_{xy}^{(1)} - 6K(g_{xx}^{(1)} + f_{xx}^{(1)}) - 12K^2(g_x^{(1)} - f_x^{(1)}) = 0, \quad (6.2.8a)$$

$$g_t^{(2)} - f_t^{(2)} - g_{xxx}^{(2)} + f_{xxx}^{(2)} - 3g_{xy}^{(2)} - 3f_{xy}^{(2)} - 6K(g_{xx}^{(2)} + f_{xx}^{(2)}) - 12K^2(g_x^{(2)} - f_x^{(2)})$$

$$= -D_t g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)} + D_x^3 g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)} + 3D_x D_y g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)} + 6K D_x^2 g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)} + 12K^2 D_x g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(1)}, \quad (6.2.8b)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & g_t^{(3)} - f_t^{(3)} - g_{xxx}^{(3)} + f_{xxx}^{(3)} - 3g_{xy}^{(3)} - 3f_{xy}^{(3)} - 6K(g_{xx}^{(3)} + f_{xx}^{(3)}) - 12K^2(g_x^{(3)} - f_x^{(3)}) \\ &= -D_t(g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} + g^{(2)} \cdot f^{(1)}) + D_x^3(g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} + g^{(2)} \cdot f^{(1)}) + 3D_x D_y(g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} + g^{(2)} \cdot f^{(1)}) \\ & \quad + 6K D_x^2(g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} + g^{(2)} \cdot f^{(1)}) + 12K^2 D_x(g^{(1)} \cdot f^{(2)} + g^{(2)} \cdot f^{(1)}), \end{aligned} \quad (6.2.8c)$$

... ..

按照双线性 Bäcklund 变换求解的一般步骤, 首先取 $f = 1$, 即 $f^{(j)} = 0, j = 1, 2, \dots$, 其对应于 KP 方程的零解, 由 (6.2.7-8) 就可以得到关于 $g^{(j)}$ 的方程. 令 $K = \frac{p_1 - k_1}{2}$, 算得

$$g^{(1)} = e^{\xi_1}, \quad \xi_1 = k_1(x + \omega_1 t + p_1 y) + \xi_1^{(0)}, \quad (6.2.9a)$$

$$\omega_1 = k_1^2 + 3p_1^2, \quad g^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 2, 3, \dots, \quad (6.2.9b, c)$$

其对应 KP 方程的单孤子解.

如果取

$$f^{(1)} = e^{\xi_1}, \quad f^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 2, 3, \dots, \quad (6.2.10a)$$

$$K = \frac{p_2 - k_2}{2}, \quad (6.2.10b)$$

那么由 (6.2.7-8) 可得到双孤子解, 其中

$$g^{(1)} = b_1 e^{\xi_1} + b_2 e^{\xi_2}, \quad g^{(2)} = b_3 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2}, \quad \xi_l = k_l(x + \omega_l t + p_l y) + \xi_l^{(0)}, \quad l = 1, 2, \quad (6.2.11a)$$

$$g^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 3, 4, \dots, \quad (6.2.11b)$$

$$b_1 = -\frac{k_1 + k_2 + p_1 - p_2}{k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2}, \quad b_2 = \frac{k_1 + k_2 - p_1 + p_2}{k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2}, \quad b_3 = -\frac{k_1 - k_2 + p_1 - p_2}{k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2}. \quad (6.2.11c)$$

即

$$g = 1 + b_1 e^{\xi_1} + b_2 e^{\xi_2} + b_3 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2}. \quad (6.2.11d)$$

若取

$$f^{(1)} = b_1 e^{\xi_1} + b_2 e^{\xi_2}, \quad f^{(2)} = b_3 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2}, \quad f^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 3, 4, \dots, \quad (6.2.12a)$$

$$K = \frac{p_3 - k_3}{2}, \quad (6.2.12b)$$

我们可算出三孤子解, 其中

$$g^{(1)} = c_1 e^{\xi_1} + c_2 e^{\xi_2} + c_3 e^{\xi_3}, \quad g^{(2)} = c_4 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} + c_5 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_3} + c_6 e^{\xi_2 + \xi_3}, \quad (6.2.13a)$$

$$g^{(3)} = c_7 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2 + \xi_3}, \quad g^{(l)} = 0, \quad l = 4, 5, \dots, \quad \xi_j = k_j(x + \omega_j t + p_j y) + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad j = 1, 2, 3, \quad (6.2.13b)$$

$$c_1 = \frac{(k_1 + k_2 + p_1 - p_2)(k_1 + k_3 + p_1 - p_3)}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)(k_1 - k_3 - p_1 + p_3)}, \quad (6.2.14a)$$

$$c_2 = -\frac{(k_1 + k_2 - p_1 + p_2)(k_2 + k_3 + p_2 - p_3)}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)(k_2 - k_3 - p_2 + p_3)}, \quad (6.2.14b)$$

$$c_3 = \frac{(k_1 + k_3 - p_1 + p_3)(k_2 + k_3 - p_2 + p_3)}{(k_2 - k_3 - p_2 + p_3)(k_1 - k_3 - p_1 + p_3)}, \quad (6.2.14c)$$

$$c_4 = -\frac{(k_1 - k_2 + p_1 - p_2)(k_1 + k_3 + p_1 - p_3)(k_2 + k_3 + p_2 - p_3)}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)(k_1 - k_3 - p_1 + p_3)(k_2 - k_3 - p_2 + p_3)}, \quad (6.2.14d)$$

$$c_5 = \frac{(k_1 + k_2 + p_1 - p_2)(k_1 - k_3 + p_1 - p_3)(k_2 + k_3 - p_2 + p_3)}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)(k_2 - k_3 - p_2 + p_3)(k_1 - k_3 - p_1 + p_3)}, \quad (6.2.14e)$$

$$c_6 = -\frac{(k_1 + k_2 - p_1 + p_2)(k_2 - k_3 + p_2 - p_3)(k_1 + k_3 - p_1 + p_3)}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)(k_1 - k_3 - p_1 + p_3)(k_2 - k_3 - p_2 + p_3)}, \quad (6.2.14f)$$

$$c_7 = -\frac{(k_1 - k_2 + p_1 - p_2)(k_1 - k_3 + p_1 - p_3)(k_2 - k_3 + p_2 - p_3)}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)(k_1 - k_3 - p_1 + p_3)(k_2 - k_3 - p_2 + p_3)}. \quad (6.2.14g)$$

即

$$g = c_1 e^{\xi_1} + c_2 e^{\xi_2} + c_3 e^{\xi_3} + c_4 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} + c_5 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_3} + c_6 e^{\xi_2 + \xi_3} + c_7 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2 + \xi_3}, \quad (6.2.14k)$$

类似地, 如果取

$$f^{(1)} = c_1 e^{\xi_1} + c_2 e^{\xi_2} + c_3 e^{\xi_3}, \quad f^{(2)} = c_4 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} + c_5 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_3} + c_6 e^{\xi_2 + \xi_3}, \quad (6.2.15a)$$

$$f^{(3)} = c_7 e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2 + \xi_3}, \quad f^{(l)} = 0, l = 4, 5, \dots, \quad (6.2.15b)$$

$$K = \frac{p_4 - k_4}{2}, \quad (6.2.15c)$$

同样由 (6.2.7-8) 可算出四孤子解.

一般地在求出对应于 KP 方程的 $N-1$ 孤子解 g 后, 取 g 为 f , $K = \frac{(p_N - k_N)}{2}$, 则从 (6.2.7-8) 可确定出对应 N 孤子解 g 的表达式

$$g = \sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp\left\{\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j [\xi_j + \sum_{l=1, l \neq j}^N (1 - \mu_l) B_{jl}] + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \mu_j \mu_l (C_{jl} + i\pi)\right\}, \quad (6.2.16a)$$

$$e^{B_{jl}} = \frac{k_l + k_j - p_l + p_j}{k_l - k_j - p_l + p_j}, \quad e^{C_{jl}} = \frac{k_j - k_l + p_j - p_l}{k_j - k_l - p_j + p_l}, \quad (6.2.16b)$$

其中对 μ 的求和应取过 $\mu_j = 0, 1$ ($j = 1, 2, \dots, N$) 的所有一切可能的组合. 我们对 (6.2.16) 作进一步的整理, 则有

$$\begin{aligned} g &= \sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp\left\{\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j [\xi_j + \sum_{l=1, l \neq j}^N B_{jl}] + \sum_{l=1, l \neq j}^N (-\mu_j \mu_l) B_{jl} + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \mu_j \mu_l (C_{jl} + i\pi)\right\} \\ &= \sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp\left\{\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j [\xi_j + \sum_{l=1, l \neq j}^N B_{jl}] + \sum_{j < l}^N (-\mu_j \mu_l) B_{jl} + \sum_{j > l}^N (-\mu_j \mu_l) B_{jl} + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \mu_j \mu_l (C_{jl} + i\pi)\right\} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp \left\{ \sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j [\xi_j + \sum_{l=1, l \neq j}^N B_{jl}] + \sum_{j < l}^N (-\mu_j \mu_l) B_{jl} + \sum_{j < l}^N (-\mu_j \mu_l) B_{lj} + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \mu_j \mu_l (C_{jl} + i\pi) \right\} \\
&= \sum_{\mu=0,1} \exp \left\{ \sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j [\xi_j + \sum_{l=1, l \neq j}^N B_{jl}] + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \mu_j \mu_l (C_{jl} - B_{jl} - B_{lj} + i\pi) \right\}, \quad (6.2.17a)
\end{aligned}$$

其中

$$e^{C_{jl} - B_{jl} - B_{lj} + i\pi} = \frac{(k_l - k_j)^2 - (p_l - p_j)^2}{(k_l + k_j)^2 - (p_l - p_j)^2} = e^{A_{jl}}, \quad (6.2.17b)$$

令 $\xi_j + \sum_{l=1, l \neq j}^N B_{jl} = \xi'_j$, 则 N 孤子解的表达式与 (2.2.8) ($\sigma^2 = 1$) 一致.

上面所得的解是通过取 $K = \frac{p_l - k_j}{2}$ 一次时导出的, 下面我们看如果取 $K = \frac{p_l - k_j}{2}$ 两次会得到什么样的结果.

取 $f = 1$, $K = \frac{p_1 - k_1}{2}$, 我们可得到单孤子解, 其中 g 的表达式为 (6.2.9). 接着如果继续取 $K = \frac{p_1 - k_1}{2}$, 并设

$$f^{(1)} = e^{\xi_1}, \quad f^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 2, 3, \dots, \quad (6.2.18a)$$

$$g^{(1)} = \eta_1 e^{\xi_1}, \quad \eta_1 = a_{11}x + a_{12}t + a_{13}y + \eta_1^{(0)}, \quad (6.2.18b)$$

由 (6.2.7-8) 可算出

$$g^{(2)} = \frac{a_{11} + k_1}{k_1} e^{2\xi_1}, \quad g^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 3, 4, \dots, \quad (6.2.18c)$$

$$\omega_1 = k_1^3 + 3p_1^2, \quad a_{12} = 3[4k_1^2 p_1 + a_{11}(k_1 + p_1)^2], \quad a_{13} = a_{11}k_1 + 2k_1^2 + a_{11}p_1, \quad (6.2.18d)$$

由此得

$$g = 1 + \eta_1 e^{\xi_1} + \frac{a_{11} + k_1}{k_1} e^{2\xi_1}, \quad (6.2.19)$$

其对应 KP 方程的新单孤子解. 若取 $a_{11} = -2k_1$, 则用修正 Bäcklund 变换得到的新单孤子解与当 $\beta_1 = -2k_1^2$ 由 KP 方程 (2.2.1) ($\sigma^2 = 1$) 得到的新单孤子解 (2.2.13) 是一致的.

如果取 f 的表达式为 (6.2.19), 即

$$f^{(1)} = e^{\xi_1} \eta_1, \quad f^{(2)} = \frac{a_{11} + k_1}{2} e^{2\xi_1}, \quad f^{(j)} = 0, \quad (j = 3, 4, \dots), \quad (6.2.20a)$$

并设

$$g^{(1)} = (d_1 \eta_1 + d_2) e^{\xi_1} + d_3 e^{\xi_2}, \quad (6.2.20b)$$

$$K = \frac{p_2 - k_2}{2}. \quad (6.2.20c)$$

由 (6.2.7-8) 不难算出

$$d_1 = -\frac{k_1 + k_2 + p_1 - p_2}{k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2}, \quad d_2 = -\frac{2[2k_1^2 + a_{11}(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)]}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^2}, \quad (6.2.21a)$$

$$d_3 = \frac{(k_1 + k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^2}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^2}, \quad (6.2.21b)$$

$$g^{(2)} = (d_4\eta_1 + d_5)e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} + d_6e^{2\xi_1}, \quad g^{(3)} = d_7e^{2\xi_1 + \xi_2}, \quad g^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 4, 5, \dots, \quad (6.2.21c)$$

$$d_4 = -\frac{(k_1 - k_2 + p_1 - p_2)(k_1 + k_2 - p_1 + p_2)}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^2}, \quad d_5 = -\frac{2[2k_1^2 + a_{11}(k_1 + k_2 - p_1 + p_2)]}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^2}, \quad (6.2.22a)$$

$$d_6 = \frac{(a_{11} + k_1)(k_1 + k_2 + p_1 - p_2)^2}{k_1(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^2}, \quad d_7 = \frac{(a_{11} + k_1)(k_1 - k_2 + p_1 - p_2)^2}{k_1(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^2}, \quad (6.2.22b)$$

如果再取 $K = \frac{(p_2 - k_2)}{2}$, 并且取

$$f^{(1)} = (d_1\eta_1 + d_2)e^{\xi_1} + d_3e^{\xi_2}, \quad f^{(2)} = (d_4\eta_1 + d_5)e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} + d_6e^{2\xi_1},$$

$$f^{(3)} = d_7e^{2\xi_1 + \xi_2}, \quad f^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 4, 5, \dots, \quad (6.2.23a)$$

$$g^{(1)} = (d_8\eta_1 + d_9)e^{\xi_1} + (d_{10}\eta_2 + d_{11})e^{\xi_2}, \quad \eta_j = a_{j1}x + a_{j2}t + a_{j3}y + \eta_j^{(0)}, \quad (6.2.23b)$$

把上式代入 (6.2.7-8) 可计算出

$$\omega_j = k_j^2 + 3p_j^2, \quad a_{j2} = 3[4k_j^2p_j + a_{j1}(k_j + p_j)^2], \quad a_{j3} = a_{j1}k_j + 2k_j^2 + a_{j1}p_j, \quad j = 1, 2, \quad (6.2.24a)$$

$$d_8 = \frac{(k_1 + k_2 + p_1 - p_2)^2}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^2}, \quad d_9 = \frac{4(k_1 + k_2 + p_1 - p_2)[2k_1^2 + a_{11}(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)]}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^3}, \quad (6.2.24b)$$

$$d_{10} = \frac{(k_1 + k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^2}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^2}, \quad d_{11} = \frac{4(k_1 + k_2 - p_1 + p_2)[-2k_2^2 + a_{21}(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)]}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^3}, \quad (6.2.24c)$$

和

$$g^{(2)} = (d_{12}\eta_1\eta_2 + d_{13}\eta_2 + d_{14}\eta_1 + d_{15})e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} + d_{16}e^{2\xi_1} + d_{17}e^{2\xi_2}, \quad (6.2.25a)$$

$$g^{(3)} = (d_{18}\eta_2 + d_{19})e^{2\xi_1 + \xi_2} + (d_{20}\eta_1 + d_{21})e^{\xi_1 + 2\xi_2}, \quad (6.2.25b)$$

$$g^{(4)} = d_{22}e^{2\xi_1 + 2\xi_2}, \quad g^{(l)} = 0, \quad l = 5, 6, \dots \quad (6.2.25c)$$

$$d_{12} = \frac{(k_1 - k_2 + p_1 - p_2)(k_1 + k_2 + p_1 - p_2)(k_1 + k_2 - p_1 + p_2)}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^3}, \quad (6.2.26a)$$

$$d_{13} = \frac{4\{2k_1^2[k_1^2 - k_2^2 - (p_1 - p)^2] + a_{11}[k_1^2 - k_2^2 - 2k_1(p_1 - p_2) + (p_1 - p_2)^2](k_1 + p_1 - p_2)\}}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^4}, \quad (6.2.26b)$$

$$d_{14} = -\frac{4\{2k_2^2[k_1^2 - k_2^2 + (p_1 - p)^2] - a_{21}[-k_1^2 + (k_2 + p_1 - p_2)^2](k_2 - p_1 + p_2)\}}{(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^4}, \quad (6.2.26c)$$

$$d_{15} = 4\{-4k_1^2[2k_2^2 + a_{21}(k_2 - p_1 + p_2)] + a_{11}[-4k_2^2(k_1 + p_1 - p_2) + a_{21}[k_1^2 + k_2^2 - 2k_2(p_1 - p_2) - 3(p_1 - p_2)^2 - 2k_1(k_2 - p_1 + p_2)]]\}/(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^4, \quad (6.2.26d)$$

$$d_{16} = \frac{(a_{21} + k_2)(k_1 + k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^4}{k_2(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^4}, \quad d_{17} = \frac{(a_{11} + k_1)(k_1 + k_2 + p_1 - p_2)^4}{k_1(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^4}, \quad (6.2.26e)$$

$$d_{18} = \frac{(a_{11} + k_1)[k_1^2 - k_2^2 + 2k_1(p_1 - p_2) + (p_1 - p_2)^2]^2}{k_1(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^4}, \quad (6.2.27a)$$

$$d_{19} = -\frac{4(a_{11} + k_1)[k_1^2 - k_2^2 + 2k_1(p_1 - p_2) + (p_1 - p_2)^2][2k_2^2 + a_{21}(k_1 + k_2 + p_1 - p_2)]}{k_1(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^4}, \quad (6.2.27b)$$

$$d_{20} = \frac{(a_{21} + k_2)[k_1^2 - (k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^2]^2}{k_2(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^4}, \quad (6.2.27c)$$

$$d_{21} = -\frac{4(a_{21} + k_2)[-k_1^2 + (k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^2][2k_1^2 + a_{11}(k_1 + k_2 - p_1 + p_2)]}{k_2(k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^4}, \quad (6.2.27d)$$

$$d_{22} = \frac{(a_{11} + k_1)(a_{21} + k_2)(k_1 - k_2 + p_1 - p_2)^4}{k_1 k_2 (k_1 - k_2 - p_1 + p_2)^4}. \quad (6.2.28)$$

我们称

$$g = 1 + (d_8 \eta_1 + d_9) e^{\xi_1} + (d_{10} \eta_2 + d_{11}) e^{\xi_2} + (d_{12} \eta_1 \eta_2 + d_{13} \eta_2 + d_{14} \eta_1 + d_{15}) e^{\xi_1 + \xi_2} \\ + d_{16} e^{2\xi_1} + d_{17} e^{2\xi_2} + (d_{18} \eta_2 + d_{19}) e^{2\xi_1 + \xi_2} + (d_{20} \eta_1 + d_{21}) e^{\xi_1 + 2\xi_2} + d_{22} e^{2\xi_1 + 2\xi_2}, \quad (6.2.29)$$

所对应的解为 KP 方程的新双孤子解.

一般, 如果取 f 为新的 $N-1$ 孤子解, 那么当第一次取 $K = \frac{p_N - k_N}{2}$ 时可以得到

$$g = \left\{ \sum_{\mu_N=0,1} \exp[\mu_N(\xi_N + 2 \sum_{l=1}^{N-1} B_{Nl})] \right\} \left\{ \sum_{\mu=0,1,2} \prod_{j=1}^{N-1} \left(\frac{a_{j1} + k_j}{k_j} \right)^{\frac{\mu_j(\mu_j-1)}{2}} [a_{j1}(\partial_{k_j} + \partial_{p_j}) + 2k_j \partial_{p_j}]^{\mu_j(2-\mu_j)} \right. \\ \left. \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^{N-1} \mu_j(\xi_j + 2 \sum_{l=1, l \neq j}^{N-1} B'_{jl} + B'_{jN}) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \mu_j \mu_l (C_{jl} - B_{jl} - B_{lj} + i\pi) \right] \right\} \Big|_{B'_{jl}=B_{jl}, B'_{jN}=B_{jN}}, \quad (6.2.30)$$

若取 f 为上式, 并再取 $K = \frac{p_N - k_N}{2}$, 则有

$$g = \sum_{\mu=0,1,2} \prod_{j=1}^N \left(\frac{a_{j1} + k_j}{k_j} \right)^{\frac{\mu_j(\mu_j-1)}{2}} [a_{j1}(\partial_{k_j} + \partial_{p_j}) + 2k_j \partial_{p_j}]^{\mu_j(2-\mu_j)} \\ \exp\left[\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j(\xi_j + 2 \sum_{l=1, l \neq j}^N B'_{jl}) + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \mu_j \mu_l (C_{jl} - B_{jl} - B_{lj} + i\pi) \right] \Big|_{B'_{jl}=B_{jl}}, \quad (6.2.31)$$

其中 $e^{B'_{jl}} = \frac{k'_l + k'_j - p'_l + p'_j}{k'_l - k'_j - p'_l + p'_j}$. 取 $a_{j1} = -2k_j$, 并在 (6.2.30) 中令

$$\tilde{\xi}_N = \xi_N + 2 \sum_{l=1}^{N-1} B_{Nl}, \quad \tilde{\xi}_j = \xi_j + 2 \sum_{l=1, l \neq j}^{N-1} B'_{jl} + B'_{jN}, \quad (6.2.32a)$$

在 (6.2.31) 中令

$$\bar{\xi}_j = \xi_j + 2 \sum_{l=1, l \neq j}^N B'_{jl}, \quad (6.2.32b)$$

则 (6.2.30) 化成

$$g = \left[\sum_{\mu_N=0,1} \exp(\mu_N \tilde{\xi}_N) \right] \sum_{\mu=0,1,2} \prod_{j=1}^{N-1} (-1)^{\frac{\mu_j(\mu_j-1)}{2}} (-2k_j \partial_{k_j})^{\mu_j(2-\mu_j)} \exp \left[\sum_{j=1}^{N-1} \mu_j \tilde{\xi}_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl} \right], \quad (6.2.33)$$

(6.2.31) 可写成

$$g = \sum_{\mu=0,1,2} \prod_{j=1}^N (-1)^{\frac{\mu_j(\mu_j-1)}{2}} (-2k_j \partial_{k_j})^{\mu_j(2-\mu_j)} \exp \left[\sum_{j=1}^N \mu_j \tilde{\xi}_j + \sum_{1 \leq j < l}^N \mu_j \mu_l A_{jl} \right]. \quad (6.2.34)$$

可以看出 (6.2.33) 恰与第二章中对于 KP 方程 (2.2.1) ($\sigma^2 = 1$) 若取

$$f^{(1)} = \sum_{j=1}^{N-1} \eta_j e^{\xi_j} + e^{\xi_N}, \quad \xi_j = k_j(\omega_j t + x + p_j y) + \xi_j^{(0)}, \quad \eta_j = \alpha_j t + \beta_j x + \gamma_j y + \eta_j^{(0)}. \quad (6.2.35)$$

所得的 N 孤子解的表达式是一致的. 而 (6.2.34) 与 (2.2.17) ($\beta_j = -2k_j$) 是一致的.

当然 $K = \frac{p_j - k_j}{2}$ 也可以取三, 四次等等. 最后我们再举一个例子, 看第三次取 $K = \frac{p_1 - k_1}{2}$ 会出现什么结果, 即, 若

$$f^{(1)} = \eta_1 e^{\xi_1}, \quad f^{(2)} = \frac{a_{11} + k_1}{2} e^{2\xi_1}, \quad f^{(j)} = 0, \quad j = 3, 4, \dots, \quad (6.2.36a)$$

$$K = \frac{p_1 - k_1}{2}. \quad (6.2.36b)$$

由 (6.2.7-8) 能算出

$$g^{(1)} = \left[\frac{1}{2} \eta_1^2 + \frac{a_{11}^2 + 4a_{11}k_1 + 2k_1^2}{2k_1^2} \eta_1 + 6k_1(a_{11}^2 + 2a_{11}k_1 + 2k_1^2)t \right] e^{\xi_1}, \quad (6.2.37a)$$

$$g^{(2)} = \left[\frac{a_{11} + k_1}{2} \eta_1^2 - \frac{a_{11}^2 - 2k_1^2}{2k_1^2} \eta_1 - 6(a_{11} + k_1)(a_{11}^2 + 2a_{11}k_1 + 2k_1^2)t \right. \\ \left. - \frac{(-a_{11}^2 + 2k_1^2)(a_{11}^2 + 4a_{11}k_1 + 2k_1^2)}{2k_1^4} \right] e^{2\xi_1}, \quad (6.2.37b)$$

$$g^{(3)} = \frac{(a_{11} + k_1)^3}{k_1^3} e^{3\xi_1}, \quad (6.2.37c)$$

$$g^{(l)} = 0, \quad l = 4, 5, \dots. \quad (6.2.37d)$$

其所得到的解恰好对应 KP 方程 (2.2.1) 利用 Hirota 方法, 并取 $f^{(1)} = e^{\xi_1}(a_1 x^2 + a_2 y^2 + a_3 t^2 + a_4 xy + a_5 xt + a_6 ty + a_7 x + a_8 y + a_9 t + a_{10})$ 所得到的解. 当然如果继续取 $K = \frac{p_1 - k_1}{2}$, 可算得一系列的结果.

参考文献

- [1] J. S. Russell, Report of the committee on wave, *Report on the 7th meeting of British Association for the Advancement of science*, John Murray, London, (1838), 417.
- [2] D. J. Korteweg and G. de Vries, On the change of form of long waves advancing in a rectangular canal, and on a new type of long stationary wave, *Philos. Mag. Ser.*, **39**, (1895), 422.
- [3] A. Fermi, J. Pasta and S. Ulam, Studies of nonlinear problems, *I. Los Alamo Report*, LA1940, (1955).
- [4] N. J. Zabusky and M. D. Kruskal, Interaction of "soliton" in a collisionless plasma and the recurrence of initial states, *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, **19**, (1965), 1095-1097.
- [5] C. S. Gardner, J. M. Greene, M. D. Kruskal and R. M. Miura, Method for solving the KdV equation, *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, **19**, (1967), 1095-1097.
- [6] R. M. Miura, Korteweg-de Vries equation and generalizations. I. A remarkable explicit nonlinear transformation, *J. Math. Phys.*, **9**, (1968), 1202-1204.
- [7] R. M. Miura, C. S. Gardner and M. D. Kruskal, Korteweg-de Vries equation and generalizations. II. Existence of conservation laws and constants of motion, *J. Math. Phys.*, **9**, (1968), 1204-1209.
- [8] C. H. Su and C. S. Gardner, Korteweg-de Vries equation and generalizations. III. Derivation of the Korteweg-de Vries equation and Burgers equation, *J. Math. Phys.*, **10**, (1969), 536-539.
- [9] M. D. Kruskal, R. M. Miura, C. S. Gardner and N. J. Zabusky, Korteweg-de Vries equation and generalizations. V. Uniqueness and nonexistence of polynomial conservation laws, *J. Math. Phys.*, **11**, (1970), 952-960.
- [10] C. S. Gardner, The Korteweg-de Vries equation and generalizations. VI. Method for exact solution, *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.*, **27**, (1974), 97-133.
- [11] V. E. Zakharov and A. B. Shabat, Exact theory of two-dimensional self-focusing and one-dimensional self-modulation of waves in nonlinear media, *ZhETF*, **61**, (1971), 118, *JETP*, **34**, (1972), 62-69.
- [12] M. Wadati, The Modified Korteweg-de Vries equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan.*, **32**, (1972), 168.
- [13] M. J. Ablowitz, D. J. Kaup, A. C. Newell and H. Segur, Method for solving the sine-Gordon equation, *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, **30**, (1973), 1262-1264.
- [14] M. J. Ablowitz, D. J. Kaup, A. C. Newell and H. Segur, Nonlinear evolution equations of physical significance, *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, **31**, (1973), 125-127.
- [15] M. J. Ablowitz, D. J. Kaup, A. C. Newell and H. Segur, The inverse scattering transform-Fourier analysis for nonlinear problems, *Stud. Appl. Math.*, **53**, (1974), 249-315.
- [16] M. J. Ablowitz and P. A. Clarkson, ((Solitons, nonlinear evolution equation and inverse scattering)), *Cambridge University Press, Cambridge* (1991).
- [17] M. J. Ablowitz and H. Segur, ((Soliton and the Inverse Scattering Transform)), SIAM, philadel-

- phia, USA, (1981).
- [18] M. J. Ablowitz and P. A. Clarkson, 《Solitons, Nonlinear Evolution Equation and Inverse Scattering》, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, England, (1991).
- [19] A. V. Bäcklund, Concerning surface with consistant negative curvature, *Lunds Universitets Arsskift*, 19, (1983), Tranlated by E. M. Coddington of New York.
- [20] L. P. Eisenhart, A treatise on the differntial geometry of curves and surface, 1909.
- [21] H. D. Wahlquist and F.B. Estabrook, *Phy.Rev.Lett.*, 31, (1973), 1386.
- [22] 谷超豪等著, 《孤立子理论与应用》, 浙江科技出版社, (1990).
- [23] Y. S. Li, KdV 方程的 Darboux 变换, 在中科讨论班的报告, (1984).
- [24] R. Hirota, A few form of Bäcklund transformations and its relation to inverse scattering problem, *Pro. Theo. Phys.*, 52, (1974), 1498-1512.
- [25] 陈登远, Bäcklund 变换与 n 孤子解, 预印本, (2000).
- [26] R. Hirota, A new form of Bäcklund transformations and its relation to inverse scattering problem, *Prog. Theor.Phys.*, 52, (1974), 1498-1512.
- [27] R. Hirota, Nonlinear Evolution Equations Generated from the Bäcklund transformation for the toda lattice, *Prog. Theor.Phys*, 55, (1976), 2037-2038.
- [28] R. Hirota, A variety of Nonlinear Network Equation Generated from the Bäcklund Transformation for the Toda Lattice, *Prog. Theor. Phys. Suppl.*, 59, (1976), 64-100.
- [29] R. Hirota and J. Satsuma, Nonlinear Evolution Equation Generated from the Bäcklund transformation for the Boussinesq equation, *Prog. Theor.Phys.*, 57, (1977), 797-807.
- [30] R. Hirota and J. Satsuma, A Simple Structure of superpositon formula of Bäcklund transformation, *J.Phys.Soc.Japan.*, 45, (1978), 1741-1750.
- [31] J. J. C. Nimmo, A bilinear Bäcklund transformation for the nonlinear Schrödinger equation, *Physics Letter A*, 99, (1983), 281-286.
- [32] R. Hirota, Exact soliton of the KdV equataion for multiple collisions of solitons, *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 27, (1971), 1192-1194.
- [33] R. Hirota, Exact soliton of the Sine-Gordon equataion for multiple collisions of solitons, *J.Phys.Soc.Japan*, 33, (1972), 1459-1463.
- [34] R. Hirota, Exact envelope-soliton solution of a nonlinear wave equation, *J.Math.Phys.*, 14, (1973), 805-809.
- [35] R. Hirota, Exact N -soliton solutions of the wave equation of long wave in shallow-water and in nonlinear lattice, *J.Math.Phys.*, 14, (1973), 810-814.
- [36] R. Hirota, Exact three-soliton solution of the two-deminsional Sine-Gordon equataion, *J.Phys.Soc.Japan*, 35, (1973), 1566.
- [37] R. Hirota, Exact solution to the equation discribing cylindrical solitons, *Phys. Lett.*, 71, (1979), 393-394.
- [38] A. Nakamura and R. Hirota, Second Modified KdV equation and its exact Multi-Soliton Solution, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan.*, 48, (1980), 1755-1762.

- [39] R. Hirota and M. Ito, A Direct Approach to Multi-periodic Wave Solitons to Nonlinear Evolution Equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **50**, (1981), 338-342.
- [40] R. Hirota, Bilinearization of soliton Equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **51**, (1982), 323-331.
- [41] R. Hirota and M. Ito, Resonance of solitons in one dimension, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **52**, (1983), 744-748.
- [42] A. Nakamura and R. Hirota, A new example of explode-decay solitary wave in one-dimension, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **54**, (1985), 491-499.
- [43] J. Satsuma, N -soliton solution of the two-dimensional Korteweg-de Vries equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **40**, (1976), 286-290.
- [44] R. Hirota, Exact N -soliton solution of Nonlinear Lumped self-dual Network equations, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **35**, (1973), 289-294.
- [45] R. Hirota, Nonlinear Partial Difference Equation. I. A difference Analogue of the KdV equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **43**, (1977), 1424-1433.
- [46] R. Hirota, Nonlinear Partial Difference Equation. II. Discrete-time Toda Equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **43**, (1977), 2074-2078.
- [47] R. Hirota, Nonlinear Partial Difference Equation. III. Discrete Sine-Gordon equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **43**, (1977), 2079-2086.
- [48] R. Hirota, Nonlinear partial difference equations. IV. Bäcklund transformation for the discrete-time Toda equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **45**, (1977), 321-332.
- [49] R. Hirota, Nonlinear partial difference equations. V. Nonlinear equations reducible to linear equations, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **46**, (1979), 312-319.
- [50] R. Hirota, M. Ito and F. Kako, Two-dimensional Toda Lattice equation, *Progr. Theor. Phys. Suppl.*, **94**, (1988), 42-58.
- [51] S. F. Deng and D. Y. Chen, The novel multisoliton solutions of the KP equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **70**, (2001), 3174-3175.
- [52] D. Y. Chen, D. J. Zhang and S. F. Deng, The novel multisoliton solutions of the mKdV-sineGordon equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **71**, (2002), 658-659.
- [53] D. Y. Chen, D. J. Zhang and S. F. Deng, Remarks on some solutions of soliton equations, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **71**, (2002), 2071-2072.
- [54] Y. Zhang, S. F. Deng and D. Y. Chen, The novel multisoliton solutions of equation for shallow water waves, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **72**, (2003), 763-764.
- [55] S. F. Deng and D. J. Zhang, Novel multisoliton solutions of some soliton equations, *上海大学学报 (英文版)*, **7**, (2003), 218-222.
- [56] J. Satsuma, A wronskian representation of n -soliton solutions of nonlinear evolution equations, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **46**, (1979), 359-360.
- [57] N. C. Freeman and J. J. C. Nimmo, Soliton solutions of the Korteweg-de Vries and Kadomtsev-Ketmiashvili equations: the wronskian technique, *Phys. Lett.*, **95A**, (1983), 1-3.
- [58] J. J. C. Nimmo and N. C. Freeman, A method of obtaining the n -soliton solution of the

- Boussinesq equation in terms of a Wronskian, *Phys. Lett.*, **95 A**, (1983), 4-6.
- [59] J. J. C. Nimmo, A bilinear Bäcklund transformation for the nonlinear Schrödinger equation, *Phys. Lett.*, **99 A**, (1983), 279-280.
- [60] J. J. C. Nimmo, Soliton solutions of three differential-difference equations in Wronskian form, *Phys. Lett.*, **99 A**, (1983), 281-286.
- [61] N. C. Freeman and J. J. C. Nimmo, Soliton solutions of the Korteweg de Vries and the Kadomtsev-Petviashvili equations: the wronskian technique, *Proc. R. Soc. Lond.*, **389 A**, (1983), 319-329.
- [62] J. J. C. Nimmo and N. C. Freeman, The use of Bäcklund transformations in obtaining N -soliton solutions in Wronskian form, *J. Phys. A*, **17**, (1984), 1415-1424.
- [63] N. C. Freeman, Soliton solutions of non-linear evolution equations, *J. Appl. Math.*, **32**, (1984), 125-145.
- [64] R. Hirota, Solitons of the classical Boussinesq equation and the spherical Boussinesq equation: the wronskian technique, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **55**, (1986), 2137-2150.
- [65] R. Hirota, Y. Ohta and J. Satsuma, Wronskian structures for soliton equations, *Prog. Theo. Phys. Suppl.*, **94**, (1988), 59-72.
- [66] R. Hirota, Y. Ohta and J. Satsuma, Solutions of Kadomtsev-Petviashvili equation and the two-dimensional Toda equations, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **57**, (1988), 1901-1904.
- [67] Q. M. Liu, Solving formula of the two-dimensional Toda Lattice, *J. Phys. A*, **22**, (1989), 255-257.
- [68] I. Loris and R. Willox, Soliton solutions of Wronskian form to the nonlocal Boussinesq equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **65**, (1996), 383-388.
- [69] T. Tamizhmani, S. K. Vel and K. M. Tamizhmani, Wronskian and rational solutions of the differential-difference KP equation, *J. Phys. A*, **31**, (1998), 7627-7633.
- [70] S. Kakei, N. Sasa and J. Satsuma, Bilinearization of a generalized derivative nonlinear Schrödinger equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **64**, (1995), 1519-1523.
- [71] 张大军, 邓淑芳, 孤子解的 Wronskian 表示, *上海大学学报*, **8**, (2002), 232-242.
- [72] Y. J. Zhang, Wronskian-type solutions for the vector k -constrained KP hierarchy, *J. Phys. A*, **29**, (1996), 2617-2626.
- [73] F. Yuasa, Bäcklund transformation of the two-dimensional Toda Lattice and Casorati's determinants, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **56**, (1987), 423-424.
- [74] M. J. Ablowitz and J. Satsuma, Solitons and rational solutions of nonlinear evolution equations, *J. Math. Phys.*, **19**, (1978), 2180-2186.
- [75] J. J. C. Nimmo and N. C. Freeman, Rational solutions of the Korteweg-de Vries equation in Wronskian form, *Phys. Lett.*, **96 A**, (1983), 443-446.
- [76] V. B. Matveev, Generalized Wronskian formula for solutions of the KdV equations: first applications, *Phys. Lett. A*, **166**, (1992), 205-208.
- [77] Q. M. Liu, Double Wronskian solutions of the AKNS and the classical Boussinesq hierarchies,

- J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **59**, (1990), 3520-3527.
- [78] Q. M. Liu, X. B. Hu and Y. Li, Rational solutions of the classical Boussinesq hierarchy, *J. Phys. A: Math Gen.*, **23**, (1990), 585-591.
- [79] J. Liu and S. F. Deng, Novel Wronskian solutions of the KdV equation, *上海大学学报 (英文版)*, **7**, (2003), 223-227.
- [80] 陈登远, 《孤子引论》, 上海大学, (2003).
- [81] A. Nakamura, A bilinear N -soliton formula for the KP equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **58**, (1989), 412-422.
- [82] R. Hirota, Soliton solution to BKP equation. I. The Pfaffian Technique, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **58**, (1989), 2285-2296.
- [83] Y. B. Zeng, Deriving N -soliton solutions via constrained flows, *J. Phys. A*, **33**, (2000), L115-L120.
- [84] Y. B. Zeng and H. H. Dai, Constructing N -soliton solutions for the mKdV equation through constrained flows, *J. Phys. A*, **34**, (2001), L657-L663.
- [85] W. T. Han and Y. S. Li, Remarks on the solutions of the KP equation, *Phys. Lett. A*, **283**, (2001), 185-194.
- [86] 韩文廷, 孤子方程特解的一种矩阵表示 [学位论文], 中国科技大学, (2003).
- [87] V. K. Mel'nikov, Wave emission and absorption in a nonlinear integrable system, *Phys. Lett. A*, **118**, (1986), 22-24.
- [88] V. K. Mel'nikov interaction of solitary wave in the system described by the KP equation with a self-consistent source, *Commun. Math. Phys.*, **126**, (1989), 201-215.
- [89] V. K. Mel'nikov, A direct method for deriving a multi-soliton solution for the problem of interaction of wave on the x, y plane, *Commun. Math. Phys.*, **112**, (1987), 639-652.
- [90] V. K. Mel'nikov, Integrable method of the KdV equation with a self-consistent source, *Phys. Lett. A*, **122**, (1988), 493-496.
- [91] V. K. Mel'nikov, Capture and configuration of solitons in nonlinear integrable systems, *Commun. Math. Phys.*, **120**, (1989), 451-468.
- [92] V. K. Mel'nikov, New method for deriving nonlinear integrable systems, *J. Math. Phys.*, **31**, (1990), 1106-1113.
- [93] J. Leon and A. Latifi, Solution of an initial-boundary value problem for coupled nonlinear waves, *J. Phys. A: Math. Gen.*, **23**, (1990), 1385-1403.
- [94] V. K. Mel'nikov, Integration of the nonlinear Schrodinger equation with a source, *Inverse Problem*, **8**, (1992), 133-147.
- [95] J. Leon, Nonlinear evolutions with singular dispersion laws and forced systems, *Phys. Lett. A*, **144**, (1990), 444-452.
- [96] J. Leon, Spectral transform and soliton for generalized coupled Bloch system, *J. Math. Phys.*, **29**, (1988), 2012-2019.
- [97] M. Antonowicz, Gelfand-Dikii hierarchies with the sources and Lax representation for re-

- stricted flows, *Phys. Lett. A*, **165**, (1992), 47-52.
- [98] Y. B. Zeng and Y. S. Li, The deduction of the Lax representation for constrained flows from the adjoint representation. *J. Phys. A:Math.Gen.*, **26**, (1993), 273-278.
- [99] Y. B. Zeng, Restricted flows of a hierarchy of integrable discrete systems, *Acta Mathematicae Applicatae Sinica*, **14(2)**, (1998), 176-184.
- [100] Y. B. Zeng and S. R. Wojciechowski, Restricted flows of the Ablowitz-Ladik hierarchy and their continuous limits, *J. Phys.A:Math.Gen.*, **28**, (1995), 113-134.
- [101] Y. B. Zeng, Bi-hamiltonian structure of JM hierarchy with self-consistent sources, *Physica A*, **262**, (1999), 405-419.
- [102] Y. B. Zeng and Y. S. Li, On a general approach from Infinite-dimensional Integrable Hamiltonian systems to finite-dimensional ones, *Advances in Mathematics*, **24(2)**, (1995), 111-130.
- [103] Y. B. Zeng, Constructing hierarchy of sinh-Gordon-type equation with self-consistent source, *Physica A*, **259**, 278-290.
- [104] 王远弟等, The solutions for the KdV equation with self-consistent sources, 上海大学, (2003), 预印本.
- [105] D. J. Zhang, The N -soliton solutions for the modified KdV equation with self-consistent sources, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **71**, (2002), 2649-2656.
- [106] D. J. Zhang, The N -soliton solutions of the sine-Gordon equation with self-consistent sources, *Physica A*, **321**, (2002), 467-481.
- [107] D. J. Zhang and D. Y. Chen, The N -solutions of some soliton equations with self-consistent sources, *Chaos. Soliton. Fractals.*, **18**, (2003), 31-43.
- [108] S. F. Deng, D. Y. Chen and D. J. Zhang, The Multisoliton solutions of the KP equation with self-consistent sources, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, **72**, (2003), 2184-2192.
- [109] E. V. Doktorov and V. S. Shchesnovich, Nonlinear evolutions with dispersion laws associated with a quadratic bundle, *Phys. Lett. A*, **207**, (1995), 153-158.
- [110] V. S. Shchesnovich and E. V. Doktorov, Modified Manakov system with self-consistent source, *Phys. Lett. A*, **213**, (1996), 23-31.
- [111] R. L. Lin, Y. B. Zeng and W. X. Ma, Solving the KdV hierarchy with self-consistent sources by inverse scattering method, *Phys. A*, **291**, (2001), 287-298.
- [112] Y. B. Zeng, W. X. Ma and R. L. Lin, Integration of the soliton hierarchy with self-consistent sources, *J. Math. Phys.*, **41**, (2000), 5453-5489.
- [113] S. Ye and Y. B. Zeng, Integration of the mKdV hierarchy with an integral type of sources, *J. Phys. A*, **35**, (2002), L283-291.
- [114] Y. B. Zeng, New factorization of the Kaup-Newell hierarchy, *Physica D*, **73**, (1994), 171-188.
- [115] 曾云波, 带附加项的 AKNS 方程族的 Darboux 变换, *数学物理学报*, **15(3)**, (1995), 337-345.
- [116] Y. B. Zeng and Y. S. Li, The lax representation and darboux transformation for constrained flows of the AKNS hierarchy, *Acta. Math. Sinica. New Series*, **12(2)**, (1996), 217-224.
- [117] Y. B. Zeng and Y. S. Li, The general scheme for higher-order decompositions of zero-curvature

- equations associated with $sl(2)$, *Acta Mathematicae Applicatae Sinica*, **12(4)**, (1996), 337-353.
- [118] P. D. Lax, Integrals of nonlinear equations of evolution and solitary waves, *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.*, **21**, (1968), 467-490.
- [119] D. Y. Chen, H. W. Xing and D. J. Zhang, Lie algebraic structures of some (1+2)-dimensional Lax integrable systems, *Chaos, Solitons and Fractals*, **15**, (2003), 761-770.
- [120] M. R. Gupta, Exact inverse scattering solution of a non-linear evolution equation in a non-uniform medium, *Phys. Lett.*, **72 A**, (1979), 420-422.
- [121] W. L. Chan and K. S. Li, Nonpropagating soliton of the variable coefficient and nonisospectral Korteweg-de Vries equation, *J. Math. Phys.*, **30**, (1989), 2521-2526.
- [122] R. Hirota and J. Satsuma, N -soliton solution of the KdV equation with loss and nonuniformity terms, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan.*, **41**, (1976), 2141-2142.
- [123] M. Toda, Waves in nonlinear lattice. *Progress of Theoretical Physics Supplement*, **45**, (1970), 174-200.

近期主要工作

- [1] S. F. Deng and D. Y. Chen, The novel multisoliton solutions of the KP equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, 2001, **70**, 3174-3175.
- [2] 邓淑芳, 陈登远, 张大军, KP 方程的新解 II, 全国第三届孤立子与可积系统讨论会, 郑州大学, 2001 年 10 月 29 日 -11 月 2 日.
- [3] D. Y. Chen, D. J. Zhang and S. F. Deng, The novel multisoliton solutions of the mKdV-sineGordon equation, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, 2002, **71**, 658-659.
- [4] D. Y. Chen, D. J. Zhang and S. F. Deng, Remarks on some solutions of soliton equations, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, 2002, **71**, 2071-2072.
- [5] S. F. Deng, D. Y. Chen and D. J. Zhang, The multisoliton solutions of the KP equation with self-consistent sources, *Nonlinear evolution equations and dynamical system ICM .2002. Conference at Yellow Mountains*, 2002, August 15-18.
- [6] 张大军, 邓淑芳, 孤子解的 Wronskian 表示, *上海大学学报 (中文版)*, 2002, **8**, 232-242.
- [7] Y. Zhang, S. F. Deng and D. Y. Chen, The novel multisoliton solutions of equation for shallow water waves, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, 2003, **72**, 763-764.
- [8] S. F. Deng, D. Y. Chen and D. J. Zhang, The multisoliton solutions of the KP equation with self-consistent sources, *J. Phys. Soc. Japan*, 2003, **72**, 2184-2192.
- [9] S. F. Deng and D. J. Zhang, Novel multisoliton solutions of some soliton equations, *上海大学学报 (英文版)*, 2003, **7**, 218-222.
- [10] J. Liu and S. F. Deng, Novel Wronskian solutions of the KdV equation, *上海大学学报 (英文版)*, 2003, **7**, 223-227.
- [11] 张大军, 邓淑芳, mKdV-sineGordon 方程的孤子解, *数学物理学报*, 2003.(已接收)
- [12] S. F. Deng, D. J. Zhang and D. Y. Chen, The Solutions for the nonisospectral KP equation.(已投稿)

致 谢

我把最衷心的感谢和深深的敬意送给导师陈登远教授。陈先生在数学领域中的高深和广博的知识，敏捷的思维以及严谨的工作科研作风和高尚的品德深深地影响着我。

非常感谢陈先生带我进入了孤子与可积系统的领域，使我充分认识到了数学和物理的博大精深。五年多来在陈老师的精心指导下，我的专业知识有了很大的提高，从而为以后进一步深造打下了良好的基础。非常感谢陈先生和张大军老师对我的学习，生活的关心及对论文的精心指导。

感谢盛万成教授，王远弟教授，马和平教授，贺国强教授，陆鸣皋等教授对我的学习和生活的关心和帮助；同时感谢张翼，宁同科博士和同学李红霞，唐矛宁，陈骏等给予我的无私的帮助；感谢其他所有帮助过我的以及在一起共同学习和生活过的同学和朋友。

最后，深深地感谢我的父母和家人以及男友对我所作的无私的奉献，正是他们的关心和期待，激励我认真学习，早日完成学业。

邓 淑 芳

2003 年 12 月

附录: 孤子方程的图形

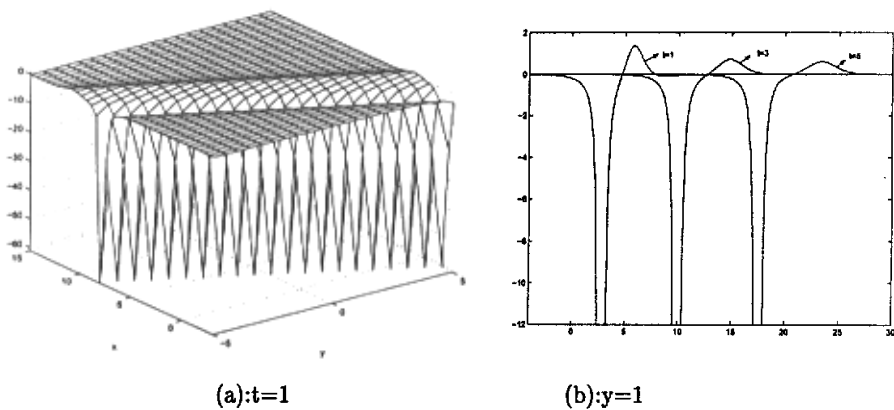


Fig.1: KP 方程新单孤子解的图形 $k_1 = 1, p_1 = 1, \sigma^2 = 1, \beta_1 = 1$

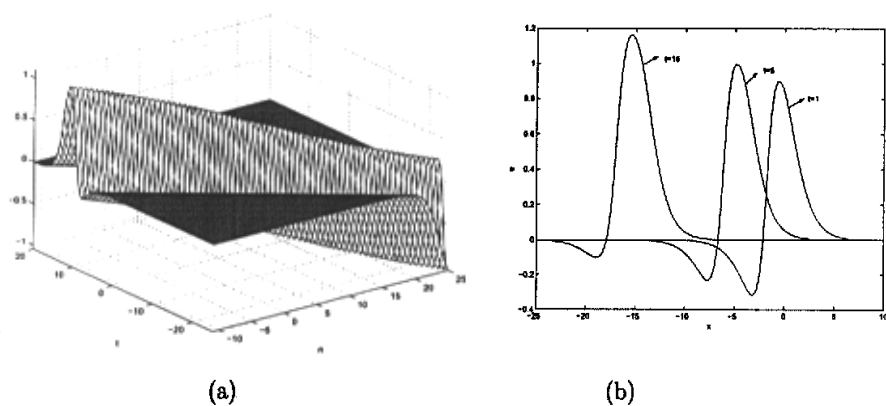


Fig.2: 非线性自偶网格方程新单孤子解的图形 $k_1 = 1, \beta_1 = 1$

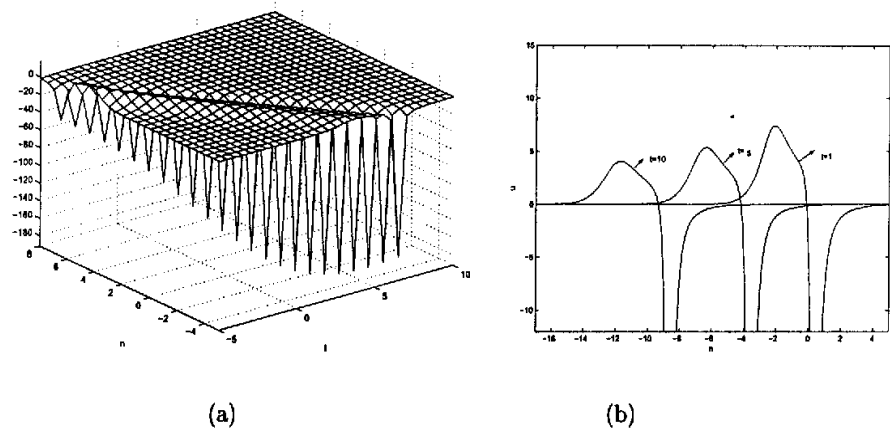


Fig.3: toda 链方程新单孤子解的图形 $k_1 = 1, \beta_1 = 1$

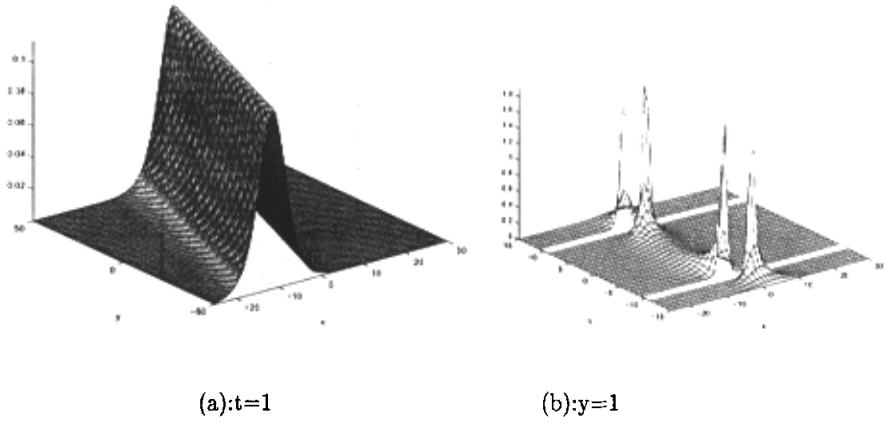


Fig.4: 非等谱 KP 方程单孤子解的图形 $c_1 = 5, \theta_1^{(0)} = 1$

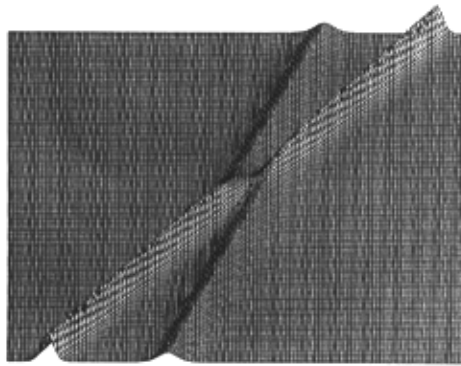


Fig.5: 非等谱 KP 方程双孤子解相互作用的图形 $c_1 = 5, c_2 = 5.8, \theta_1^{(0)} = 1, \theta_2^{(0)} = 1$

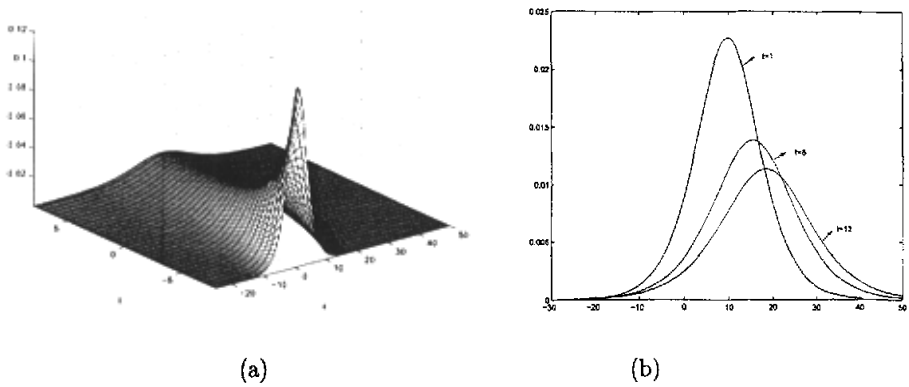


Fig.6: 非等谱 KdV 方程单孤子解的图形 $c_1 = 20, \xi_1^{(0)} = 1$

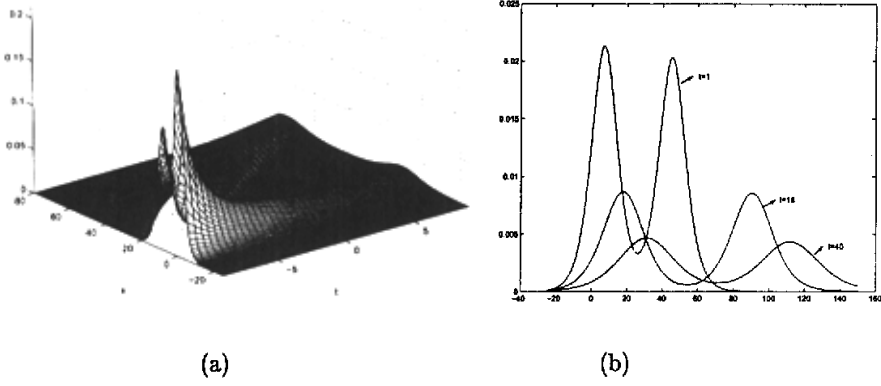


Fig.7: 非等谱 KdV 方程双孤子解的图形 $c_1 = 20, c_2 = 26, \xi_2^{(0)} = 1, \xi_1^{(0)} = 1$